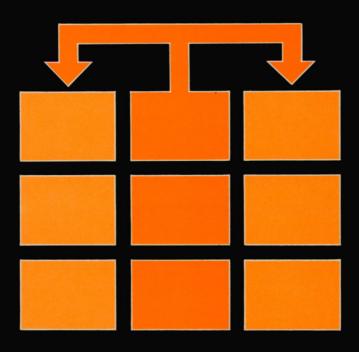
Jised for 128

BRUCE SMITH

Advanced Sideways RAM User Guide

for the MASTER and BBC Computers



VICTORY

PUBLISHING

BRUCE SMITH

Advanced Sideways RAM User Guide

for the MASTER and BBC Computers

Editor Tony Quinn



PO Box 19 London N11 1DS For more free 'classic' BBC Micro books visit:

www.brucesmith.info

(C) Bruce Smith 1986, 1987 Reprinted with revisions and updated 1987

All rights reserved No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission of Victory Publishing

ISBN 0 948938 00 5

Printed by A Wheaton & Co Ltd Exeter



Contents

INTRODUCTION Using this book	1
CHAPTER 1 What is Sideways RAM? Sideways ROMs or RAMs Why 'sideways'? Memory maps Getting your priorities right Summary Listings	3 5 6 7,8 9 10
CHAPTER 2 The Sideways Header ROM types Copyright offset Version number Title string Version string Tube relocation address Standard header Sideways writing *SWRITE Listings	13 16 18 19 19 19 21 21 23
CHAPTER 3 Service ROMS Service call types table SRAM utilities explained *SRLOAD *SRREAD *SRSAVE ROM copyright Listings	25 26 28 29 29 30 30 31
CHAPTER 4 The Help Service *HELP Extended *HELP (service call 9) Interactive help (service call 24) Masking Listings	33 33 35 39

CHAPTER 5	
Intepreters	48 48
Command action (service call 4)	48
Writing the interpreter Debugging interpreters	52
Writing commands	53
Gaining workspace	55
Listings	57
CHAPTER 6	65
OSBYTE and OSWORD	66
OSBYTE OSWORD	67
Listings	71
CHAPTER 7	
Extended Vectors	80
Working example	82
Listings	85
CHAPTER 8	
Pot Pourri	90
Service call 5 Service call 6	91
Service call 11	91
Service call 12	92
Service call 15	93
Service call 16	93
Service call 17	93 93
Service call 18 Service call 21	94
Service call 37	95
Service call 38	95
Service call 39	95
Service call 254	96 96
Service call 255	96
About filing systems Listings	98
CHAPTER 9	
Configure and Status	105
Choosing the byte	105
It's a date	106 106
Extending status Extending configure	100
The program	110
The right byte	110
Listings	112
CHAPTER 10	
Booting ROMs	119

Internal key numbers table Entering the program Listings	120 122 123
CHAPTER 11 Workspace	128
Hidden memory map Static and Dynamic	128
Service call 36 (&24)	129
Service call 33 (&21)	129
Service call 34 (&22)	130 130
Service call 1	132
Service call 2	132
Using Private Workspace	132
Using Static Workspace	133
For the technically-inclined Listings	134
CHAPTER 12	136
ROM Calls	142
Operating system read (OSRDRM)	143
ROM byte	144
OSBYTE &16 (*FX 22)	144
OSBYTE &17 (*FX 23) OSBYTE &8D (*FX 141)	144
OSBYTE &8E (*FX 141)	144
OSBYTE &8F (*FX 143)	144 144
OSBYTE &A8 (*FX 168)	168
OSBYTE &AA (*FX 170)	145
OSBYTE &B3 (*FX 179)	145
OSBYTE &BA (*FX 186)	145
OSBYTE &BB (*FX 187) OSBYTE &FC (*FX 252)	145
Listings	145
213 011193	146
CHAPTER 13	
ROM Filing System (RFS)	147
Service call 13	148
Service call 14 The ROM image	149
ROM filing system vectors	150
ROM image formatter	151 152
Using the formatter	152
Checking the image	153
The procedures	156
Listings	157
CHAPTER 14	
Language ROMs	164
Absolute musts Languages and the Tube	165
Master monitor MASMON	166
- THOM	167

Service call 42 Listings	169 170
CHAPTER 15 Errors Error message storage table Service ROM errors Language ROMs ESCAPE Error numbers Listings	178 179 180 181 182 183 183
GLOSSARY	191
APPENDIX A Hex and Binary Number conversion table	199 199
APPENDIX B BBC B/B+ Conversions and Compatibility Assembler Program compatibility table B/B+/B+128 Service calls BBC B+128 BBC B and B+ OPT 4 to 7	202 202 203 204 204 204 205
APPENDIX C Program Details Listing 1 1 Sideways RAM demonstration	207
Listing 2 1 Read ROM table address Listing 2 2 Form ROM header Listing 3 1 Trace ROM Listing 4 1 *HELP ROM Listing 4 2 Print number version on *HELP Listing 4 3 Extended *HELP Listing 5 1 Test interpreter Listing 5 1 Test interpreter Listing 6 1 OSBYTE ROM Listing 6 2 Test new OSBYTE ROM Listing 6 3 OSWORD ROM Listing 6 4 Test new OSWORD call Listing 7 1 Extended vector ROM Listing 8 1 Polling interrupt ROM Listing 8 2 Print date on reset Listing 9 1 Configure and status ROM Listing 10 1 Auto-boot ROM Listing 11 1 Private workspace ROM Listing 12 1 Read title string from ROM	207 207 208 208 208 209 209 210 210 211 211 211 212 212
Listing 13 1 ROM filing system (RFS)	212

Listing 14 1 MASMON language ROM Listing 15 1 BRK errors Listing 15 2 Error test ROM	213 213 213
Listing 15 3 ErrorWise language ROM	213
APPENDIX D	
Links (not relevant to Compact)	214
Link 18 setting for SRAM/ROM Link 19 setting for SRAM/ROM	215
Link geography	215 215
APPENDIX E	
Postscript	216
Interactive help	216
Language ROMs	216
OSWORD calls OSBYTE calls	216
OSBYTE 68(&44) test RAM presence	218 218
OSBYTE 69(&45) test use of SRAM bank	218
*INSERT	218
*UNPLUG	218
INDEX	219
BIBLIOGRAPHY	228
ADDENDUM	
Notes on first edition	229
DISC ORDER FORM	
Master, Compact, BBC B/B+/B+128, Electron	230
PROGRAMS	
Listing 1 1 Sideways RAM demonstration	11
Listing 2 l Read ROM table address Listing 2 2 Form ROM header	15
Listing 3 1 Trace ROM	23
Listing 3 1 Trace ROM Listing 4 1 *HELP ROM	31 41
Listing 4 2 Print number version on *HEID	42
Listing 4 3 Extended *HELP	43
Listing 4 4 Interactive *HELP Listing 5 1 Test interpreter	45
Listing 5 1 Test interpreter Listing 5 2 Command coding	57
Listing 6 1 OSBYTE ROM	61 71
Listing 6 2 Test new OSBYTE ROM Listing 6 3 OSWORD ROM	71 74
Listing 6 3 OSWORD ROM	75
Listing 6 4 Test new OSWORD call Listing 7 1 Extended vector ROM	79
Listing / I Extended vector ROM Listing 8 1 Polling interrupt ROM	85
Listing 8 2 Print date on reset	98

Listing 9 1 Configure and status ROM	112
Listing 10 1 Auto-boot ROM	123
Listing 11 1 Private workspace ROM	136
Listing 12 1 Read title string from ROM	146
Listing 13 1 ROM filing system (RFS)	
formatter	157
Listing 13 2 Hex and ASCII dump facility	163
Listing 14 1 MASMON language ROM	170
Listing 15 1 BRK errors	183
Listing 15 1 DRA CITOIS	183
Listing 15 2 Error test ROM	187
Listing 15 3 Errorwise language ROM	10/
FIGURES	
	7
Figure 1 1 Traditional memory map	8
Figure 1 2 Master memory map	8
Figure 1 3 Sideways Rum arrangement	
Figure 5 1 Modern character font	49
Figure 5 2 Command table construction	50
Figure 11 1 Hidden memory map	128
Figure 13 1 Hexadecimal dump of ROM image	154
Figure 14 1 MASMON screen	168
Figure 15 1 Internal storage of an error	
message	179
TABLES	
Table 2 1 Format of the ROM header	14
Table 2 2 ROM bank allocated address	16
Table 3 1 Service call register	
initialisation	25
Table 3 2 Service call types	26
Table 7 1 Extended vectors	81
Table 10 1 Internal key numbers	120
Table 11 1 ROM workspace	131
Table 12 1 Paged ROM - associated RAM	
addresses	143
Table 12 2 OSBYTE calls associated	
with sideways ROMs	143
Table 13 1 ROM filing system commands	
and calls	147
Table 13 2 ROM filing system vectors	151
	199
Table Al Number conversion	
Table Bl Program compatability	203

Preface to Second Edition

The contents of this book are fully applicable to the Master Compact. The Compact has one new feature plus some changes which are discussed below. There has been much feedback on the first edition from readers and friends for which I am most grateful. Most of this has been incorporated, and those points which could not be dealt with in the text are discussed on page 229

Bruce Smith November 1986

Master Compact

The most significant improvement is the addition of an optional I (insert) parameter as part of the *SRLOAD and *SRWRITE commands If I is specified (with or without a Q parameter - see page 28), the ROM image will be automatically inserted into the ROM memory map and be available for immediate use Typical examples of use of the I parameter are

- *SRLOAD Rom 8000 7 I
- *SRWRITE 5000+500 8000 6 QI

If the I option is left off, CTRL-BREAK must be used to 'insert' the ROM

The Compact comes with 64k of ROM supplied, whereas the Master has 128k Hence *ROMS (page 20) shows that only sockets &F, &E and &D contain ROM titles

- &F UTILS 01
- &E Basic 40
- &D ADFS 10

The word 'RAM' will appear in sockets 4,5,6 and 7
The ROM slots occupy the lower right hand side of the printed circuit board inside the Compact keyboard These compare with the Master 128 as follows

Compact	Max sıze	Slot number	Master 128 position
IC38	32k	0,1	Cartridge (sk3)
IC53	16k	2	Cartridge (sk4)
IC17	16k	3	Cartridge (sk4)
IC29	16k	8	IC27

Appendix D link notes are not relevant to the Compact

Introduction Using This Book

Sideways RAM is a philosophy central to the design of the Master series of microcomputers. Four sideways memory areas are provided for you to load in ROM software images from disc. This facility not only allows you to keep copies of ROM software on disc and avoid having to handle chips and cartridges, but also, and even more exciting, to develop your own software that can be accessed by * commands And that is what this book is really all about - providing you with the theory, backed up with tried and tested programs.

Of course sideways RAM was not invented for the Master, its predecessor the BBC B+128 also has the sideways Acorn machines - BBC B, the other available to use - and also be fitted with plug-in Electron B+ and can BBC sideways RAM boards which instantly open up this new world for you If you're looking for a RAM board then magazine reviews (typically that by Chris Drage in the May 1986 edition of Acorn User)

The practical approach of this book is emphasised by the fact that there are over 25 listings, the majority of which all form sideways RAM images which will give you extra *commands when they are loaded into a sideways RAM bank As a reference guide, even the most devote sideways RAM follower will find it invaluable and the full index will allow you to locate information quickly and simply

Although programs are written with the Master in mind, Appendix B contains full conversion details for the BBC B, BBC B+, BBC B+128 and Electron microcomputers

The ROM Formatter program presented in chapter 13 is worth the price of the book alone! It will enable you to format your favourite BASIC or machine code programs in

such a way that they to can be used as a RAM image and loaded in or run without the need to access disc or tape. For those of you who suffer from tired fingers after the first three lines then a disc of the programs can be obtained - details at the rear of this book.

Listings

All the listings have been tried and tested before being dumped to a printer. The listings are written in BASIC 4 and will run on BASIC 2 with no correction - users of BASIC 1 will need to doctor the listings slightly but full details are provided. In an effort to provide clarity a daisywheel printer has been used to produce the listings. Note the difference between the following characters.

	number	one	1
smal	l lette	c'el'	1
	number	zero	ø
large	letter	'oh'	0
-	hash		≠

All the listings are dumped with LISTOI, WIDTH40

The future

Sideways RAM has proved itself to be among the most popular aspects of BBC computing - to continue this we at Victory Publishing with your co-operation hope to provide a regular newsletter on just this topic So let's hear your views, your ideas and see your programs

Acknowledgments

Many thanks to the following Linda Dhondy, Alex van Someren, Steve Mansfield, Derek Coombes, Kitty Milne (keep on Computing), and everyone on Acorn User

June 1986

Chapter One What is Sideways RAM?

Question What is sideways RAM? Answer I'm not going to tell you! (Yet)

Now don't get me wrong, I'm not trying to be difficult What I am going to do is first show you Master owners what sideways RAM is -- and just how useful it can be Then in the rest of this book I'll explain how you can use it to further your own needs, so that by the last page you'll feel confident in being able to approach the task of writing your own software in sideways format without too much trouble All you have to know for the moment is that the sideways RAM is ready and waiting in your Master and I'm going to prove it with a little demonstration

Type in listing I I found at the end of the chapter It's just 50 lines long so shouldn't tax even the worst typists. Leave out the first five lines if you want Once it has all been typed in, save the program to a disc or tape before running it - just in case there's an accident (If so you can load it back in) Use the filename 'DEMO' to save the program under, ie

SAVE DEMO'

Right, now for the moment of truth RUN the program If you get any errors, correct them and save the program again The most likely place for errors is in the DATA lines For example

Out of data at line 140

means you have missed out an item or items of DATA in lines 29% to 51% If you get the message

Data error - please check

then you have made a typing error within the data which has been picked up by a checking routine in lines 190-260 So look through it all again carefully. If the message persists then get someone else to check it for you. When everything is okay the usual cursor prompt will appear Remember, if you make any corrections to the program, re-save it each time.

All OK? Then congratulations, you have written a sideways RAM program Simple wasn't it? Writing sideways RAM programs isn't normally as boring as entering in rows of numbers - I've just done it that way to make it easier for the time being The next thing to do is to initialise the sideways RAM program - in other words tell the micro it's there This is done by performing a CTRL-BREAK (To do this, hold down the CTRL key, press the Break key once and then release the CTRL key) The Master will display its normal start-up message as when you first turn on Now type

*ROMS

A list similar to this should appear

```
ROM F TERMINAL ØI
ROM E VIEW Ø4
ROM D Acorn ADFS 50
ROM C BASIC Ø4
ROM B Edit ØI
ROM A ViewSheet Ø2
ROM 9 DFS Ø2
ROM 8 ?
ROM 7 ?
ROM 6 ?
ROM 5 ?
ROM 4 Beep 1 Ø ØI
ROM 3 ?
ROM 2 ?
ROM 1 2
ROM Ø ?
```

This lists the software held in the Master The seven at the top of the list are standard and come with the micro when you buy it We are interested in number 4

ROM 4 Beep 1 Ø Ø1

5

What you have done is to put a program called 'Beep' into an area of sideways RAM when you ran the DEMO program above 'Beep' is designed to act as if it was an actual ROM chip

The command *HELP lists the ROMs present in the machine Try it now

*HELP

The result will look something like this

OS 3 2Ø MOS

TERMINAL 1 2Ø

VIEW B3 Ø

EDIT 4

ViewSheet Bl Ø

SRAM 1 ØØ

Beep 1 Ø

So Beep 1 Ø has been added to the *HELP list Now type

NEW

followed by the following short program

1Ø FOR N%=1 TO 2Ø

2Ø *BEEP

3Ø NEXT N%

RUN this, and you'll get a continuous tone from the speaker of your micro When the din stops try typing in *REFP This time you'll get a single beep

*BEEP This time you'll get a single beep
What the original program has done is to add a new
command to the Master's vocabulary - *BEEP If you
don't believe me turn the Master off for a few seconds,
then switch it back on and go through the *ROMS, *HELP
procedure and see where it gets you'

Sideways ROMs or RAMs

The terms sideways RAM and sideways ROM often go hand in hand - but what is the difference between them?

Well, in short, sideways RAM is volatile (ie it can change) while sideways ROM is non-volatile (it can't)

RAM stands for Random Access Memory — you can read its contents and you can also change them. It is a volatile medium in that its contents are only preserved while it has power supplied to it. As soon as the power source is removed, the contents are lost. They can be restored by switching on the power and loading them back in. This was exemplified with the *BEEP example. The DEMO program wrote the code for this into the correct area of RAM. The *BEEP command was available to us all the time the power was switched on. As soon as the power was removed, ie by switching the micro off, the code for *BEEP was lost. It can be placed back into the Master by loading and running the program again.

ROM stands for Read Only Memory As its name suggests this memory can only be read from - it cannot be written to ROMs are an example of a non-volatile memory, their contents are not affected by power being present or not The Master is fitted with a single ROM chip when you buy it - the 'MegaROM' as it is called in Acorn's user guides This contains all the machine code that is required to run your micro - BASIC, the MOS, View, Viewsheet, DFS, ADFS, Edit and Terminal

MOS, View, Viewsheet, DFS, ADFS, Edit and Terminal Sideways RAM and sideways ROM both have their pros and cons The obvious advantage of sideways ROMs is that they are always present within the machine - ready for instant use as soon as you switch the Master on The disadvantage is that if you wish to add a new or extra sideways ROM you need to take the lid of the micro and physically fit it into one of the ROM sockets, or use a cartridge Sideways RAM does not suffer from this disadvantage because you can just load it in from disc or tape Its other big advantage is that it allows you to write and develop customised software - a rewarding and possibly profitable hobby!

When a program is written to work in sideways RAM, it is converted into a 'ROM image'. This can be loaded into a sideways RAM bank or saved to disc for future loading. Once the ROM image is in sideways RAM we can for all intents and purposes use it as if it were a ROM, although strictly speaking it's not. This interchange of terms is quite common in books and magazines, not to mention the Master itself, so don't be put off - it's simply quicker and easier to say!

Why 'Sideways'?

The nagging question you may have at this moment is what is the relevance of the term 'sideways'? To answer

need to understand something about the 65C12 microprocessor at the heart of the Master The amount of memory that any microprocessor can actually address (le write to or read from) at any one time depends on of 'addressing lines' it has The address number lines, collectively called the address bus, are the from the 65Cl2 chip These lines wires that radiate can have one of two states - either on or off The two states can be indicated by the numeric values 1 and Ø By switching on combinations of address lines we can build up patterns of I's and Ø's You may already realise that this forms what is termed a binary binary than talk In computing however, rather number strings of ones and zeroes we convert to a special number system called hexadecimal, based on 16 rather You may already be familiar with this term if not then take a look at Appendix A and the Glossary before going any further

The 65CI2 chip has sixteen address lines, so the address of a byte of memory is when all maxımum lines are 'on' In binary terms this is represented as IIIIIIII IIIIIIII, which is &FFFF or 65535 decimal Therefore there are 65536 addressable locations within the Master (65536 because the first is at location \emptyset)
If we convert this figure into kilobytes by dividing through 1024 we arrive at 64k Figure 1 1 shows this is traditionally arranged The first 32k is given over as RAM, the top 32k contains first the 16k BASIC language and above this the 16k MOS (machine operating system) But think about what your Master contains It RAM and 128k of ROM in its standard 128k of 256k in all, yet we have just that's configuration determined that the maximum addressable memory of the

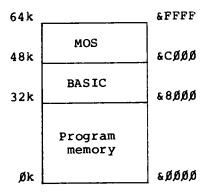


Figure 1 1 The traditional memory map

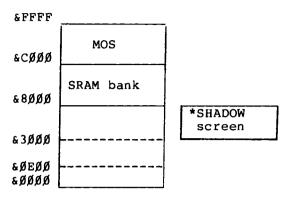


Figure 1 2 Software can be read into SRAM bank Memory for shadow screen sits alongside main block

BASIC	Те	rm	View	ADFS	Edit	View Sheet	DFS
Figure 1		Sid	leways s	oftware	can be	paged	into

Master is a mere quarter of this! The answer lies in having the extra memory present but 'overlaying' it into the main memory map as and when it is requested For example you can gain extra programming memory in that first 32k bank of RAM by selecting shadow memory with the command *SHADOW When this command is executed the Master intercepts any subsequent commands to do with the screen and redirects it away from program memory to the shadow RAM area In other words, the contents are put to one side (figures I 2 and I 3) That last word provides the clue to how the term sideways arose

The ROMs supplied in the MegaROM, with the exception of the MOS, all occupy the same section or bank of memory That is the 16k from &8000 to &BFFF So in figures I 2 and I 3 they appear to stretch sideways across the memory map when you use a particular command, the MOS locates which ROM that command belongs to and allows that ROM to take control of the 16k of memory normally occupied by the BASIC language This technique is often called 'paging' and gives rise to the term 'paged ROM'

Sideways RAM is simply a bank of RAM that is treated in exactly the same way - in fact the MOS cannot tell the difference between sideways RAM and sideways ROM -

only we can! A total of 64k of the Master's RAM is capable of being paged into this sideways slot. As each slot is 16k, that gives us a total of four sideways RAM banks, ie 4*16k=64k

You may be wondering why only a 16k section of RAM was provided as the slot for sideways RAM, and why the whole of the 32k of memory above &8000 is not used. The answer is straightforward. The Master cannot operate without the MOS present, because this handles all the donkey work such as writing to the screen, reading the keyboard and moving to and from other ROMs. All that sideways RAM, or ROM programs ever need to do to perform such a task is to call the appropriate routine within the MOS. In fact in many instances it is done automatically by the MOS without you ever knowing reading and displaying key presses for example

Getting your priorities right!

As we saw in the list of ROMs earlier, each sideways ROM or RAM slot is given a number. In fact the Master has the capability to address 16 ROM or RAM sockets and these are numbered from Ø to 15. To keep in line with normal computing tradition these sockets are normally referred to by their hexadecimal equivalents, ie &Ø to &F Of course I use the term socket for descriptive purposes. There are not 16 sockets physically inside the case of the Master, but they are in theory

The MegaROM containing the standard software occupies seven 'sockets', &9 to &F The four banks of sideways RAM are overlaid into positions 4, 5, 6 and 7 Make a mental note of these now as we will need to refer to these positions constantly when writing sideways RAM programs

One final point is that the sideways RAM memory is taken over when you use BASI28, the special version of BASIC supplied on the Welcome disc to give you access to 64k of RAM for programs Obviously, you cannot use BASI28 and sideways RAM at the same time

Summary

So, sideways RAM is a special area of memory into which we can place programs. These programs are written to special, but easy to follow rules which will be explained in the next chapter. Once in sideways RAM, a program will behave as if it were in a ROM chip

As we have seen we can extend the Master's vocabulary so it can carry out special tasks for us at the whim of typing in a chosen command *BEEP was not exactly

earth-shattering stuff, but no matter how simple or complex a command you decide to write, it will still need to be implemented in the same way Incidentally, the two-digit number given alongside the ROM name when you type *HELP is the version number There'll be more on this in the next chapter

The tutorial approach of this chapter using simple programs as examples will be followed throughout this book. The end result of some of the examples may be mundane, but it's getting there and seeing how things are done that counts. Therefore the implementation will be covered in depth while the example will be kept as simple as possible to avoid confusion. The programs are not written for efficiency or to optimise speed and space. When you have mastered the basics, then tacking on your own routines will be a minor problem.

Listing I I Sideways RAM demonstration Save as DEMO

```
10 REM A simple demo
 20 REM DEMO
 3Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 40 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 5Ø
 6Ø PROCread
 7Ø PROCchecksum
 8Ø *SRWRITE 4ØØØ +72 8ØØØ 4
 9Ø END
IØØ
IIØ DEF PROCread
120 base=&4000
13Ø FOR loop=Ø TO 113
140 READ data
15Ø base?loop=data
16Ø NEXT loop
17Ø ENDPROC
18Ø
19Ø DEF PROCchecksum
200 N%=0
210 FOR loop=0 TO 113
22Ø N%=N%+base?loop
23Ø NEXT
24Ø IF N%=13477 THEN ENDPROC
25Ø VDU 7
26Ø PRINT
            Data error - please check
27Ø STOP
28Ø
29Ø DATA Ø,Ø,Ø,76,23
3ØØ DATA 128,13Ø,18,1,66
31Ø DATA 1Ø1,1Ø1,112,32,49
32Ø DATA 46,48,Ø,Ø,4Ø
33Ø DATA 67,41,Ø,72,2Ø1
34Ø DATA 9,24Ø,6,2Ø1,4
35Ø DATA 24Ø,33,1Ø4,96,152
36Ø DATA 72,138,72,32,47
37Ø DATA 128,1Ø4,17Ø,1Ø4,168
38Ø DATA 104,96,32,231,255
39Ø DATA 162,255,232,189,9
400 DATA 128,32,227,255,208
41Ø DATA 247,32,231,255,96
42Ø DATA 152,72,138,72,162
43Ø DATA 255,136,232,2ØØ,177
44Ø DATA 242,41,223,221,109
45Ø DATA 128,24Ø,245,189,1Ø9
46Ø DATA 128,16,15,2Ø1,255
47Ø DATA 2Ø8, II, I69, 7, 32
48Ø DATA 227,255,1Ø4,1Ø4,1Ø4
```

Listing I I continued

49Ø DATA 169,0,96,104,17Ø 5ØØ DATA 104,168,104,96,66 51Ø DATA 69,69,80,255

Chapter Two The Sideways Header

I mentioned in the first chapter that programs placed sideways RAM or ROM must conform to a specific In this chapter format for them to work correctly at the arrangement of this format, we'll look couple of dozen bytes particular the as the 'ROM header' We'll be using a few referred to terms that may well be new to you so I'll explain each one as we go along The first six bytes of the header, from &8000 to &8005, contain two entry points into the These are two sets of machine code sıdeways ROM instructions arranged like this

\$8000 JMP xxxx \$8003 JMP yyyy

where xxxx and yyyy are hex addresses

The first three-byte address is the language entry point and the second the service entry point With one exception all ROMs have service entry points, but not all ROMs have a language entry point

The service entry point causes a jump to a piece of machine code designed to handle requests for information given by the MOS For example, when you type in *HELP, the MOS asks each ROM in turn to print out its individual *HELP message Similarly, if the MOS finds a command it does not know beginning with an asterisk (eg *BEEP), it asks each ROM in turn if it recognises the command The one exception to this rule is the BASIC ROM, which the MOS recognises by its lack of a service entry point The only ROMs that have language entry points are, surprise, surprise, language

ROMs View, Viewsheet, and Edit are examples of language ROMs, as well as more traditional names such as Forth, Pascal, etc This language entry point provides the means for the sideways ROM to take control of the Master as we shall see later on If a ROM is not a language then it should leave these first three bytes of the ROM image alone, setting them to zero

of the ROM image alone, setting them to zero

Table 2 I provides a brief list of the bytes at the
front of the ROM header which have a specific function

Byte	Function
8ØØØ	Language entry point
8ØØ3	Service entry point
8ØØ6	ROM type (language or service)
8ØØ7	Copyright offset pointer
8ØØ8	Binary version number
8ØØ9	ASCII title string
8xxx	(terminator byte &ØØ) ASCII version string (terminator byte &ØØ)
8үүү	ASCII Copyright string (terminator byte &ØØ)
8 z z z	Tube relocation address

Table 2 I Format of the ROM header

The first IØ bytes of the ROM header (8000-8009) are fixed and may always be found at a specific address. The bytes after the ASCII string title, though important, may be of variable length. These bytes consist mainly of ASCII character strings that define the ROM title and copyright labels. Each of these ASCII character strings ends with a zero (terminator byte)

While the language and service entry points into a sideways ROM are obviously important to the functioning of the ROM, the information in the bytes following is of equal importance. The copyright string, and in particular the C itself within the brackets, (C), is most important as without it the ROM will not be recognised as one! The byte at &8007 is the 'copyright string offset pointer' which contains the number of bytes (called the 'offset') from the start of the ROM to the &00 byte immediately prior to the copyright string (see figure 2 I)

When switched off, or after a CTRL-BREAK, the MOS extracts the value of the offset and uses it as an index to test for the presence of a copyright string If there is one then the MOS is sure that a sideways

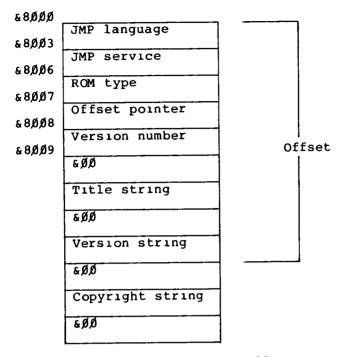


Figure 2 1 Calculating the offset

ROM is present in that particular bank. The next stage in the initialisation process is to build a 'ROM type table' by extracting the type byte from each ROM and storing it in table form in memory for reference (The ROM type table in the Master's MOS, version 3 0, is located from the 16 bytes starting at &2AI) The address of the table can be read for other operating systems using OSBYTE 170 Entering and running listing I 2 will do this for you

```
IØ REM Read ROM table address
2Ø A%=17Ø
3Ø X%=Ø
4Ø Y%=255
5Ø addr%=(USR(&FFF4)) AND &FFFFØØ
6Ø addr%=addr% DIV 256
7Ø PRINT ~addr%
```

Listing 2 1 Reads ROM table Save as TABLE

Table 2 2 gives the address where the type number for each ROM is stored Reading the address will tell you

what type of	ROM	software	18	ın	а	particular	sideways
ROM/RAM bank						•	-

ROM bank	Address	
	&2AÎ	
Ø	&2A2	
2	&2A3	
3	&2A4	
4	&2A5	
5	&2A6	
6	&2A7	
7	&2A8	
8	&2A9	
9	& 2AA	
ÌØ	& 2AB	
11	& 2AC	
12	&2AD	
13	& 2AE	
14	&2AF	
1 5	& 2BØ	

Table 2 2 Address associated with each ROM bank

If any ROM banks are found to be 'empty' then a zero is placed in the relevant table byte. Thus if ROM 6 were empty a zero byte would be placed at location &2A7 If a sideways ROM position contains a ROM, its 'type byte' is read and placed in the byte position in the type table.

ROM Types

The byte at &8%6 contains the ROM type (table 2 1) which gives the MOS information about the ROM Each bit in the byte conveys the following information

Bit 7 Set if the ROM has a service entry, therefore it must always be set as all ROMs must have a service entry point. The ONLY exception to this rule is BASIC

Bit 6 Set if the ROM has a language entry point

Bit 5 Set if the ROM has a second processor relocation address, for example if the ROM contains a 'Hi' version of a language. For this to happen the code in the ROM, bar the service entry coding, must have been assembled for second processor addressing in mind. The service call coding is not copied across the Tube interface to the second processor, and only languages may be copied across the Tube.

Bit 4 This bit is used by ROMs operating on the Electron only (If set it controls the use of soft key

expansion allowing the Electron to implement function key operations using the CTRL and SHIFT sequences, as these are not normally available)

- Bit 3 If set, ROM contains Z80 code
- If set, indicates other processor code Bit 2
- Bit I Must always be set (only exception is BASIC)
 Bit Ø Set to zero, but may be used as bit 2

The following short program will produce a list of the ROM types in your machine

- 10 REM List ROM types
- 2Ø FOR N%=&2AI TO &2BØ
- 3Ø PRINT ~N% =
- 40 NEXT N%

On a standard Master 128 the list produced will look like this (I have added the ROM names)

- $2AI = \emptyset$
- $2A2 = \emptyset$
- $2A3 = \emptyset$
- $2A4 = \emptyset$
- $2A5 = \emptyset$
- $2A6 = \emptyset$
- $2A7 = \emptyset$ $2A8 = \emptyset$
- $2A9 = \emptyset$
- 2AA = 82DFS
- Viewsheet 2AB = C2
- Edit 2AC = C2
- $2AD = 6\emptyset$ - Basic
- 2AE = 82- Acorn ADFS 2AF = C2- View
- 2BØ = C2 Terminal

The above list shows that the most common ROM type numbers are &C2 and &82 Let's look at these in detail

We can see the ROM has language and service entry points ROMs with this type number include View and Viewsheet The other main ROM type is

$$82 = 1000 0010$$

showing that this ROM has only a service entry ROMs

with this type number include the DFS and ADFS. The BASIC ROM has the type number

```
&6Ø = ØIIØ ØØØØ
```

This indicates it has a language entry point and a Tube relocation address. As already mentioned BASIC has no service entry point. In addition bit I is also clear, which must normally be set

Copyright Offset

This byte at &8007 gives the number of bytes (the offset) from the start of the ROM to the &00 terminator byte immediately before the copyright string As described earlier the copyright string is used to identify a sideways ROM. The following lines of code could be used to test for the presence of a ROM (the variable 'vector' is a zero page byte address vector containing &8000)

```
LDY ≠7
                 \ offset at +7
LDA (vector),Y
                 \ get offset
TAY
                 \ move into Y register
INY
                 \ add one
INY
                 \ add one
                 \ get byte
LDA (vector),Y
CMP #ASC('C")
                 \ is it 'C' from (C)?
                 \ if no, there's no ROM'
BNE norom
```

Of course it is possible to pick up ASCII C as garbage from an empty bank (so says Murphy's law), so it is worth testing the bytes either side of the C to ensure that they are equal to the ASCII values for "(and ')"

IMPORTANT A capital C must be used for the copyright indicator - a lower case c will not be recognised as such!

Version Number

The version number is not used by the MOS at all It is simply a byte provided for you to keep track of software development. The eight bit value should relate to the version number of the software herein. Thus if the software was version 5 the byte here could contain &Ø5. This is the number displayed after the ROM name when *ROMS is used.

Title String

This is an ASCII string starting from &8009 and terminated by a zero byte. If the ROM is a language then the MOS prints this string on the screen when the ROM is initialised. This string is also normally the one printed out when *HELP is performed.

Version String

This ASCII string is optional It allows the user to print the version number of the ROM during the processing of *HELP This string must be terminated by a zero byte, &ØØ If the ROM is a language then on entry to it the error pointer vector at &FD and &FE will be made to point to the version number if it is present If the version string is not present the error pointer will go to the copyright string

Tube Relocation Address

If bit 5 of the ROM type byte is set then the MOS expects to find a Tube relocation address at this point This is the address to which the ROM contents, which will be a language, will be copied. The code must therefore be written with the second processor relocation address borne in mind. The service coding should not though, and should assemble as normal. This is because the service code is not copied across the Tube, as discussed in Chapter 14

Standard Header

Writing all the above information into a BASIC or assembler program is not difficult Program 2 I shows just how simple it is Type it in and save it under the name 'HEADER' RUN the program, and reply as you wish to the two questions Here's how I fared

```
Enter ROM title Tester
Enter copyright string Bruce Smith
Assembling header
8000
8000
```

The program first asks you to enter the ROM title string, I used 'Tester', followed by the copyright string, my name Note that I did not enter the (C) as this has already been incorporated into the program

The message 'Assembling header' is printed The two numbers 8000 show assembly of the code is underway When the prompt returns the ROM header is in position Type *ROMS to check it has happened My results were

ROM F TERMINAL ØI ROM E VIEW Ø4 ROM D Acorn ADFS 5Ø ROM C BASIC Ø4 ROM B Edit ØI ROM A ViewSheet Ø2 ROM 9 DFS Ø2 ROM 8 ? ROM 7 Tester ØI ROM 6 ? ROM 5 ? ROM 4 ? ROM 3 ? ROM 2 ? ROM 1 ? ROM Ø ?

Sure enough, ROM 7 contains the Tester title Let's look at the assembly program in detail now to see what happened and how

Lines 160 to 180 We cannot assemble our machine code header directly into sideways RAM. So we need to assemble it elsewhere in memory, but make the assembler think it's going into memory from &8000. This can be done using OPTs in the range 4 to 6 (or 7) and using the O% pointer in conjunction with P% (If you are not too familiar with this aspect of the assembler, then refer to Appendix B) The pointer O% points to &5000 which is where the machine code for the header is actually assembled

Lines 190 to 200 Assemble the language entry point As there is no language entry, three zero bytes are inserted using EQUB and EQUW

Line 210 Assembles the service entry point The code is simply a direct JMP to the start of the service polling code This is marked by the label 'service' (line 320)

Line 220 Assembles the ROM type code The byte assembled is the standard one for a service only ROM, ie &82 Refer to text above for details

Line 23 \emptyset Assembles the copyright offset pointer Uses the MOD function to calculate the offset, which is the remainder of the division by 256 (line 28 \emptyset)

Line 240 Assembles the binary version number of the ROM coding, $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$ in this case

Line 250 Label marking start of the ROM title string

Lines 260 to 270 Assemble the ASCII title string terminated by a zero byte

Line 280 Label marking 'offset'

Lines 290 to 310 Assemble the copyright string, orefixed and terminated by a zero byte

prefixed and terminated by a zero byte
Line 320 Label marking the start of the service

entry code

Line 330 The service entry coding here consists simply of a return Any service calls to this ROM will be returned without effect

Sideways Writing

Once the code has been assembled, it needs to be transferred across into a sideways RAM bank. This is done in line 90 by the command *SRWRITE This command requires four items of information to work on, thus

*SRWRITE(<start addr>+<length>)<relocated addr> <ROM id>

Let's examine each parameter in turn

The two start addresses are to be in hexadecimal Line 90 in program 2 1 is as follows

*SRWRITE 5000 +200 8000 7

This shows that the start address of the assembled code is &5000, its length is &200 bytes, and it is to be relocated at &8000 in sideways RAM bank number 7. The length value can be substituted by the address +1 of the end of the code if so desired For example, if the code started at &5000 and ended at &6123, we could use

*SRWRITE 5000 6124 8000 7

The absence of the + sign before the second value informs the MOS that the number following is an

address and not an offset Note that the second number is $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$ greater that the actual end address of the code and must follow on from the first value

There are several more sideways RAM utility commands supplied with the Master and these will be examined in the next chapter

2Ø A%=17Ø 3Ø X%=Ø 4Ø Y%=255

Listing 2 1 Reads ROM table address Save as TABLE

10 REM Read ROM table address

5Ø addr%=(USR(&FFF4)) AND &FFFFØØ

```
6Ø addr%=addr% DIV 256
   7Ø PRINT ~addr%
Listing 2 2 Produces standard ROM header Save as
HEADER
   10 REM Form ROM header
   20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   30 REM The Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø REM
   5Ø MODE 7
   6Ø PROCqetstrings
   7Ø PRINT''"Assembling header"''
   8Ø PROCassemble
   9Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 7
  IØØ END
  IIØ
  120 DEF PROCassemble
  13Ø osnewl=&FFE7
  140 osasci=&FFE3
  15Ø FOR pass=4 TO 6 STEP 2
  160 P%=&8000 O%=&5000
  17Ø [
  180 OPT pass
  19Ø EQUB Ø
  2ØØ EQUW Ø
  21Ø JMP service
  22Ø EQUB &82
  23Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
  24Ø EQUB 1
  25Ø
      title
  26Ø EQUS title$
  27Ø EQUB Ø
  28Ø offset
  29Ø EQUB Ø
  3ØØ EQUS "(C) "+copy$
  31Ø EQUB Ø
  32Ø service
  33Ø RTS
  34Ø ]
  35Ø NEXT
  36Ø ENDPROC
```

37Ø

Listing 2 2 continued

```
38Ø DEF PROCgetstrings
39Ø PRINT 'Enter ROM title ',
40Ø INPUT "title$
41Ø PRINT "Enter copyright string ,
42Ø INPUT " "copy$
43Ø ENDPROC
```

Chapter Three Service ROMs

As we have seen, all sideways ROMs, except BASIC, must have a service entry point. The machine code here will depend on the sophistication of the software, but the ROM must be capable of identifying all the calls it needs to function correctly. Service calls that are of no importance to it can be ignored by returning to the MOS with an RTS instruction. The coding to look after service calls must include an 'intepreter' capable of recognising individual commands, and acting on them.

In all there are 31 possible service calls, though most will not require processing by service-only ROMs
When a service call is made, the highest priority ROM bank is polled first (ROM &F) and the call is then

When a service call is made, the highest priority ROM bank is polled first (ROM &F) and the call is then passed down through the ROMs until one recognises the call and acts on it When a service entry is required, the three processor registers are used to pass the service call details as shown in table 3 I

Register	Service call information
Accumulator X register Y register	Service typeNumber of current ROMAny extra service parameter

Table 3 1 Service call register initialisation

If the service call is not recognised by the current ROM the service coding must restore all register values and return using RTS. In most instances it will be the MOS issuing the service call, but other ROMs may issue

a service call using an OSBYTE call as follows

```
LDA #&8F \ issue ROM service call

LDX #type \ X contains service type requested

LDY #param \ Y contains any parameter

JSR OSBYTE \ execute
```

On return from the OSBYTE call, the $\, \, Y \,$ register will contain any resultant value so this should be checked as required

Table 3 2 lists all the service call types It is

Call	Туре			
Ø (&ØØ)	Call already provided			
1 (&Ø1)	Claim absolute workspace in normal RAM			
2 (&Ø2)	Claim private workspace in normal RAM			
3 (&Ø3)	ROM auto boot			
4 (&Ø4)	Command not recognised			
5 (&Ø5)	Interrupt not recognised			
6 (&Ø6)	BRK			
7 (&Ø7)	OSBYTE not recognised			
8 (&Ø8)	OSWORD not recognised			
9 (&Ø9)	*HELP			
ÎØ (&ØA)	Claim static workspace in normal RAM			
ÎÎ (&ØB)	Release NMI			
12 (&ØC)	Claim NMI			
13 (&ØD)	Initialise ROM filing system			
14 (&ØE)	Return byte from ROM filing system			
Î5 (&ØF)	Vectors claimed			
16 (&1Ø)	EXEC/SPOOL files about to close			
Î7 (&ÎÎ)	Character set about to explode/implode			
2Î (&Î5)	Polling interrupt			
24 (&18)	Interactive *HELP			
33 (&2Î)	Indicate static RAM in hidden RAM			
34 (&22)	Claim private workspace in hidden RAM			
35 (&23)	Tell top of static workspace in hidden RAM			
36 (&24)	Private workspace requirements			
37 (&25)	Inform MOS of filing system name and information			
38 (&26)	Close all files			
39 (&27)	Reset has occurred			
40 (&28)	Unknown *CONFIGURE option			
4Î (&29)	Unknown *STATUS option			
42 (&2A)	ROM based language starting up			
54 (&FE)	Secondary Tube initialisation			
55 (&FF)	Main Tube initialisation			

Table 3 2 Service call types

Service ROMs 27

not necessary to memorise or understand these at present as each will be explained later on as needed In many instances full working examples will also be provided. The table is purely for reference.

The service calls are not all dished out one by one by

The service calls are not all dished out one by one by the MOS In fact on a hard reset only II calls are issued by the MOS The others are issued as and when

they are needed

Listing 3 I will allow you to see what service calls are issued by the MOS and when The service entry coding simply contains a short routine that will print out the current service call number before returning control back to the MOS As all service calls are issued to every ROM, every service call number issued will be printed When you have typed in and saved the program enter the following three lines directly at the keyboard to check the accuracy of what you have typed

N%=Ø FOR X%=&5ØØØ TO &5Ø4B N%=N%+?X% NEXT PRINT N%

The value printed should be 6525 if not then recheck your listing carefully. Once the checksum value is correct save the program under the filename "TRACE". Once saved, simply RUN the program. Then, as the program does not contain a transfer routine, type this in at the keyboard.

*SRWRITE 5000+100 8000 7

Typing *ROMS should show that the code is installed safely in position

To initialise our Trace ROM we need to perform a 'hard reset' by doing a CTRL-BREAK Once you have done this, the Master should re-initialise itself and the normal start-up messages will be preceded by some hexadecimal numbers as follows

ØF 24 2Î 22 ØÎ Ø2 23 25 FE Acorn MOS

27 Acorn 177Ø DFS

ØF BASIC

>

These hex numbers are the service calls issued by the MOS during the hard reset, and there are II of them

Compare them to table 3 2 above to see what is happening

Now try pressing just the BREAK key, and the screen will clear as follows

25 FE Acorn MOS

27 ØF BASIC

>

This time just four calls are issued by the MOS, clearly showing the major differences between a 'hard' and 'soft' break, or reset

Assuming you're using a disc system, type

*CAT

Before the disc catalogue appears you'll see that service calls ØC and ØB are issued

Typing *HELP shows that requests Ø9 and 18 are issued

Play around for yourself to see what calls are issued when To remove the Trace ROM coding you'll need to switch the Master off

SRAM Utilities Explained

When you type *HELP the last message you see is

SRAM I ØØ

These are the sideways RAM utilities, and typing

*HELP SRAM

provides the following list

SRDATA <1d >
SRLOAD <filename> <sram address> (<1d >) (Q)
SRREAD <dest start> <dest end> <sram start> (<1d >)
SRROM <1d >
SRSAVE <filename> <sram start> <sram end> (<1d >)
(Q)
SRWRITE <source start> <source end> <sram start> (<1d >)
End addresses may be replaced by +<length>

Service ROMs

SRWRITE has been explained, and SRDATA and SRROM are not directly applicable, so let's look at the others

*SRLOAD

This command is similar in action to *SRWRITE with which we are familiar However, instead of writing a block of memory into sideways RAM, it writes a file from disc, tape or whatever filing system is in use Let's try an example First load program 3 I, TRACE, and RUN this to assemble the machine code Next we must *SAVE this block of code in the normal manner

*SAVE R TRACE 5000 +100

The prefix R reminds us it is a ROM image If your filing system will not readily accept this name then choose something suitable (eg RTRACE on networks)

To use *SRLOAD we need three items of information the filename, the memory address it is to be loaded to and the RAM bank in which it is to be placed

*SRLOAD R TRACE 8000 7

We can specify an extra item of information, a Q

*SRLOAD R TRACE 8000 7 Q

When the Q is seen by the routine it will perform a Quick, that is fast, transfer It will load the file into memory at PAGE and copy it straight across into the RAM bank. The advantage of this method is its speed. The disadvantage is that it will overwrite any program or data in memory. If you wish to keep memory contents intact then use the former method and omit the Q In such cases the routine saves the memory area from corruption. However it is considerably slower. Try both methods to see for yourself. Don't forget to CTRL-BREAK to initialise the ROM image once loaded.

*SRREAD

Performs the reverse operation of *SRWRITE It reads the contents of the specified ROM into memory starting at a defined location For example, to read a ROM in socket 7 into memory starting at &2000 use

*SRREAD 2000 6000 8000 7

This command will obviously cause the contents of

memory to be overwritten. The first two addresses are the start and end addresses in memory to which ROM data is to be transferred. The third address (8000) is the start address in RAM of the data to be transferred, while finally the ROM identity (id) is specified. Therefore in this case, the data in ROM 7 starting at \$8000 will be transferred to \$2000 until \$6000 is reached.

*SRSAVE

This command is like *SRREAD except that the ROM contents are saved to the current filing system under the specified filename For example, to save a ROM in RAM bank 7 we could use

*SRSAVE R ROM 8ØØØ CØØØ 7

The first two address specified are the start and end addresses of the sideways RAM to be transferred. The final value is the ROM identity number. Like *SRLOAD a Q may be tagged onto the end of the command line for a quick, but memory destroying, save

Note that it is not possible to save a ROM with an identity number greater than 8 (ie 9 to \$\frac{15}{2}\$) This is to prevent illegal copying of the ROMs in the Megabit ROM An illegal address error will result if you try

ROM Copyright

It is apparent now that it would be advantageous to have copies of ROMs on disc Using the above commands it is a simple process to do this. A whole library of ROM images can be held on a single disc and loaded in when needed - thus avoiding the need to continually get inside the case to change chips or swap ROM cartridges. However, images of some commercially available ROMs will not function in sideways RAM because of the protection mechanisms employed by software houses to prevent the abuse of such copying If a ROM image hangs up or will simply not function then it is almost certainly protected.

45Ø ADC ≠&3Ø 46Ø CLD

47Ø JMP oswrch

```
Listing 3 Traces service calls as they are issued by
the MOS Save as TRACE
   10 REM Service call Trace
   20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   30 REM The Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø
   5Ø PROCassemble
   6Ø END
   7Ø
   80 DEF PROCassemble
   9Ø oswrch=&FFEE
  IDD FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
  110 P%=&8000 O%=&5000
  12Ø [
  13Ø OPT pass
  14Ø EQUB Ø
  15Ø EQUW Ø
  16Ø JMP service
  17Ø EQUB &82
  18Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
  19Ø EQUB I
      title
  2ØØ
  210 EQUS "Service Trace ROM"
  22Ø EQUB Ø
      offset
  23Ø
  24Ø EQUB Ø
  25Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
  26Ø EQUB Ø
  27Ø
      service
  28Ø PHA
  29Ø PHA
  3ØØ LSR A
  31Ø LSR A
  32Ø LSR A
  33Ø LSR A
  340 JSR convert
350 PLA
  36Ø AND ≠15
  37Ø JSR convert
  38Ø LDA ≠32
  39Ø JSR oswrch
  4ØØ PLA
  4IØ RTS
  42Ø
      convert
  43Ø SED
  44Ø CMP ≠ÎØ
```

Listing 3 I continued

48Ø] 49Ø NEXT 5ØØ ENDPROC

Chapter Four The Help Service

I don't intend to deal with each service call in numeric order Some are much more difficult to process than others, so I'll start with the easiest, *HELP

*HELP

When the MOS encounters a *HELP command it looks through its ROM type table and polls each of the ROMs it sees with service call 9 All ROMs should respond to this call by printing out at least their title string. The equivalent in BASIC of the service coding is

IF A%=9 THEN PRINT title\$ ELSE RETURN

In machine code this becomes

```
\ is it *HELP?
CMP ≠9
               \ yes, process it
BEQ help
               \ no, so return
RTS
 help
               \ print a new line
JSR osnewl
               \ use X as index
LDX ≠255
 helploop
               \ increment index
INX
               \ get byte
LDA title,X
               \ if zero, then finished
BEQ done
JSR osascı
               \ print byte
BRA helploop
               \ and repeat once more
 done
               \ print a new line
JSR osnewl
               \ and return
RTS
```

The coding uses OSNEWL to print a blank line before and after the title string for layout purposes main ROM title string is the one being printed out end of this is located by testing for the terminating zero byte Note that this should not be printed itself an exit should be performed once it has 4 I puts this simple *HELP 1dent1f1ed Program implementation into action. Save the program under the filename 'HELPI' see the machine code You can 43Ø inclusive described above in 27Ø to lines title string and terminating byte are in lines 200-220

One very good reason for including a *HELP routine in your software is to aid debugging. By issuing the command it is immediately evident whether your sideways software is present. If you have a working *HELP service routine and it will not respond then there's more likely to be a bug in your software - or perhaps you've forgotten to load it into sideways RAM correctly (I've made that error on many an occasion!)

If you type *HELP you will notice that all of the resident software in the Master print out a version number as well as its title string This can see whether you are using important when you wish to latest version of your firmware and the 18 difficult to do It simply involves inserting the ASCII version string in the correct position (after the ASCII title string) and terminating it with a zero byte. Once the service coding has printed out the title string, it around once again to print the version number This could be done by placing another print loop at the end of the 'helploop' routine, but it's inefficient and by rewriting the 'help' routine slightly a single 'helploop' can be used

```
help
JSR osnewl \ print new line
LDX ≠255 \ start index
JSR helploop \ print title string
JSR helploop \ print version string
JSR osnewl \ print new line
RTS \ and return
```

Three new lines are needed to insert a version string, directly after the title string terminating byte

```
version
EQUS " I ØØ'
EQUB Ø
```

You can use program 4 1 as a base to work on If you

insert and change the relevant lines, then RENUMBER the
program, you should arrive at listing 4 2 Save this as
'HELP2' Once this has been RUN and initialised, typing
*HELP should give

Help Test ROM 1 ØØ

near the bottom of your *HELP list

Obviously it will help when debugging if, each time a change is made to the ROM coding, you simply increment the version number by \emptyset \emptyset I, resave it and make a note in a safe place detailing the change

Extended *HELP (Service Call 9)

Type *HELP again The resulting list on a Master 128 will look like this

*HELP

OS 3 2Ø MOS

TERMINAL 1 2Ø

VIEW B3 Ø

Advanced DFS I 5Ø ADFS

EDIT 4

ViewSheet BI Ø

DFS 2 2Ø DFS

SRAM I ØØ

Some of the help strings have another line of information set below them, indented slightly For example

OS 3 2Ø MOS

This shows that an extended help facility is provided By typing *HELP followed by a space and the word on the next line we can gain more information, normally a list of the commands provided by that particular ROM Typing *HELP MOS gives

OS 3 2Ø			
CAT	ADFS	APPEND	BASIC
BUILD	CLOSE	CONFIGURE	CODE
CREATE	DUMP	DELETE	EXEC
EX	FX	GOIO	GO
HELP	INFO	IGNORE	INSERT
KEY	LOAD	LIST	LINE
LIBFS	MOTOR	MOVE	OPT
PRINT	RUN	REMOVE	ROM
ROMS	SAVE	SHADOW	SHOW
SHUT	SPOOL	SPOOLON	STATUS
TAPE	TV	TIME	TYPE
UNPLUG	X		

Adding this facility to our own *HELP is a two-stage affair First we need to print out the extra item(s) of information below the title string when service call 9 is processed Second, we need to be able to distinguish between a straight *HELP and an extended *HELP The first part is to just extend the printing routine For example, suppose we wish to print out

```
Help Test ROM 1 00
Commands
```

The coding for this would simply become

```
\ print title string and version
JSR help
LDX ≠255
               \ start X
details
INX
               \ increment index
LDA command,X
               \ get byte
               \ finish if it is zero
BEQ donecom
               \ print it
JSR osascı
BRA details
               \ do next byte
JSR osnewl
               \ print new line
               \ return
command
EOUS Commands"
EOUB Ø
```

The 'help' routine is as listed in the previous program Checking for extended help is a two-stage affair First we need to see if there is a command after the *HELP or not If there is, we test to see if it's ours, ie 'COMMAND'

Testing for the presence of an extra command involves

looking for a return character (ASCII I3 or &ØD) If there is one, the command is a straight *HELP if not, there is an extended *HELP command present

The next question is how do we go about locating the presence of a return? The answer lies in memory locations &F2 and &F3 These two bytes, which I have termed 'comline', contain the address of the first non-space character after the help when combined with the Y register using indirect indexed addressing In other words the code

LDA (comline),Y

will load either a return character or the first letter of the extended help into the accumulator. If the character is not a return, we need to test each character from here against a copy of our own. This is done by incrementing. Y and comparing it with a copy of the command using the X register, as in the following example.

```
\ get byte after *HELP
LDA (comline),Y
                    \ is it return?
CMP ≠13
                    \ yes to return
BEQ out
                    \ initialise X index
LDX ≠&FF
                    \ decrement Y index
DEY
 agaın
                    \ increment X index
INX
                    \ increment Y index
INY
LDA (comline),Y
                    \ get byte
                    \ force to upper case
AND ≠&DF
                    \ compare against table
CMP com,X
BEQ again
                    \ if same do again
                   \ get unlike byte from table
LDA com,X
                    \ is it end marker flag?
CMP ≠&FE
                    \ yes go to print routine
BEQ mine
RTS
 COM
EOUS "COMMANDS"
EQUB &FE
```

The first two instructions test for a return character — if this is encountered then a branch to an RTS is made. The X register is set to &FF and the Y register decremented to make it point to the character before the start of the extended help. The label 'again' marks the main loop. Both index registers are incremented to make them point at the first character in the extended help and 'com' table. The first byte is extracted from after the *HELP Using &DF this byte is then forced.

into an upper case, or capital, character (see note at
end of chapter) This is important as the protocols
allow us to enter

- *HELP COMMANDS
 *HELP commands
- *HELP CoMmAnDs

or any such combination Forcing the byte to upper case allows us simply to test it against a table of upper case characters starting at 'com' If the bytes are the same the loop is repeated until an unlike character is encountered. I have marked the end of the 'com' string with a particular byte &FE This can then be tested for If it is indeed &FE then we have identified the string as COMMANDS and the relevant extra details can be printed out. If the unlike byte is not an &FE then this is not our extended help and an RTS can be made or can it? The trouble now is that we have destroyed the contents of all three index registers, so when the MOS passes this call onto the next ROM some very confusing things could happen So, to avoid this, on entering the service coding push all three registers onto the hardware stack, ie

PHA - push accumulator

PHX - push X

PHY - push Y

and restore them prior to returning, ie

PLY - pull Y

PLX - pull X

PLA - pull accumulator

Listing 4 3 puts all this into operation Once RUN, type *HELP, then type *HELP COMMANDS This will respond with

Help Test ROM I ØØ COMPRESS EXPAND

Where COMPRESS and EXPAND might be two commands implemented by our ROM If you look through the listing you can see the important new sections of code

Lines 340 to 360 - save registers

Lines 370 to 380 - test for return

Line 39% - branch to check if extended *HELP

Lines 400 to 500 - print *HELP message Lines 520 to 640 - check for COMMANDS

Lines 650 to 700 - restore registers and return

Lines 720 to 780 - print *HELP messages Lines 800 to 870 - printing routine

Lines 890 to 960 - print extended help information

Lines 970 to 1020 - restore and return

Lines 1030 to 1140 - extended help details

Interactive Help (Service Call 24)

Once the MOS has polled all ROMs with service call 9 it then polls them with service call 24 This allows your ROM to take up and provide any more help information This will generally be an 'interactive help' required and the exact nature of the help may well depend on answers to questions that are prompted by the ROM How and what you do with this service call, if anything at all, is up to you One example is seen on Econet network machines fitted with the Advanced Network Filing System (ANFS) When this service call is issued the ANFS will look for a file called 'HELP on fileserver You could implement this from tape or disc or even load in routines from the ROM itself

Program 4 4 shows how the service call can be trapped the user wished further information on see ıf imaginary commands within the Help Test ROM In fact it replaces the extended help detailed above

Save the listing under the filename 'HELP4' running and initialising the ROM, type *HELP After the standard help messages the following line will be printed on the screen

Do you wish more help? (Y/N)

Pressing the Y key will display

The following commands are available with the Master ROM

COMPRESS - compacts a graphics screen - unpacks a graphics screen EXPAND

Pressing any key other than Y will cause the routine to exit

Masking

In a few instances above we used the byte &DF with the AND command to force an ASCII character to its upper case component Let's examine how this works Consider ASR-D

the ASCII and binary representation of the letters B and b $\,$

ASC("B") = &42 =
$$\emptyset$$
I \emptyset \emptyset \emptyset I \emptyset
ASC("b") = &62 = \emptyset II \emptyset \emptyset \emptyset I \emptyset

The only difference between these two values at bit level is that bit 5 is either set or clear Therefore by toggling bit 5 we can swap the case of an ASCII alpha character To force lower case to capital we need to ensure that every bit in the byte is set to I with the exception of bit 5 In binary the mask is

If the accumulator holds &62 (ASC"b') and this is ANDed with &DF we get

ASC"b" = ØIIØ ØØIØ &DF = IIØI IIII AND = ØIØØ ØØIØ = &42 or ASC "B"

```
Listing 4 I Traps service call 9 to output a simple
*HELP message Save as HELPI
   10 REM Simple *HELP
   2Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø
   5Ø PROCassemble
   6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +1ØØ 8ØØØ 6
   7Ø END
   8Ø DEF PROCassemble
   9Ø osnewl=&FFE7
  IØØ FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
  IIØ P%=&8ØØØ
               O%=&5ØØØ
  12Ø [
  13Ø OPT pass
  14Ø EQUB Ø
  15Ø EQUW Ø
  16Ø JMP service
  17Ø EQUB &82
  18Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
  19Ø EQUB I
  200 title
  210 EOUS Help Test ROM"
  22Ø EQUB Ø
  23Ø offset
  24Ø EQUB Ø
  25Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
  26Ø EQUB Ø
  27Ø service
  28Ø CMP ≠9
  29Ø BEQ help
  3ØØ RTS
  31Ø \
  32Ø
      help
  33Ø JSR osnewl
  34Ø LDX ≠&FF
  35Ø
      helploop
  36Ø INX
  37Ø LDA title,X
  38Ø BEQ done
  39Ø JSR &FFE3
  400 BRA helploop
  4IØ
      done
  42Ø JSR osnewl
  43Ø RTS
  44Ø ]
  45Ø NEXT
  46Ø ENDPROC
```

Listing 4 2 Gives version number as well as ROM string title Save as HELP2 Developed from listing 4 \hat{I} (HELP \hat{I})

```
IØ REM *HELP with Version No
 20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 40
 5Ø PROCassemble
 6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +1ØØ 8ØØØ 6
 7Ø END
 8Ø DEF PROCassemble
 9Ø osnewl=&FFE7
IND FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
110 P%=&8000 O%=&5000
12Ø [
13Ø OPT pass
14Ø EQUB Ø
15Ø EQUW Ø
16Ø JMP service
17Ø EQUB &82
18Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
19Ø EQUB 1
2ØØ
    tıtle
210 EQUS "Help Test ROM"
22Ø EOUB Ø
23Ø version
24Ø EQUS " I ØØ"
25Ø EQUB Ø
26Ø
    offset
27Ø EQUB Ø
28Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
29Ø EQUB Ø
300 service
31Ø CMP ≠9
32Ø BEQ help
33Ø RTS
34Ø \
35Ø
   help
36Ø JSR osnewl
37Ø LDX ≠&FF
38Ø JSR helploop
39Ø JSR helploop
4ØØ JSR osnewl
410 RTS
42Ø \
43Ø helploop
44Ø INX
45Ø LDA title,X
```

Listing 4 2 continued

46Ø BEQ done 47Ø JSR &FFE3 48Ø BRA helploop 49Ø done 50Ø RTS 51Ø] 52Ø NEXT 53Ø ENDPROC

Listing 4 3 Adds description of ROM commands to *HELP message Save as HELP3 This program forms the basis of many others in this book

```
IØ REM Extended *HELP
 20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 4Ø
 5Ø PROCassemble
 6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6
 7Ø END
 80 DEF PROCassemble
 9Ø osnewl=&FFE7
100 comline=&F2
IIØ FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
12Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
13Ø [
140 OPT pass
15Ø EQUB Ø
16Ø EQUW Ø
17Ø JMP service
18Ø EQUB &82
19Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
2ØØ EQUB Î
2ÎØ title
22Ø EQUS "Help Test ROM"
23Ø EQUB Ø
24Ø version
25Ø EQUS " Î ØØ"
26Ø EQUB Ø
   offset
27Ø
28Ø EQUB Ø
29Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith
3ØØ EQUB Ø
310 service
32Ø CMP ≠9
33Ø BNE nothelp
34Ø PHA
```

Listing 4 3 continued

```
35Ø PHX
36Ø PHY
37Ø LDA (comline),Y
38Ø CMP ≠13
39Ø BNE check
400 JSR help
41Ø LDx ≠255
42Ø details
43Ø INX
440 LDA command, X
450 BEO donecommand
46Ø JSR &FFE3
47Ø BRA details
48Ø donecommand
49Ø JSR osnewl
500 BRA restore
51Ø \
52Ø
   check
53Ø LDX ≠255
54Ø DEY
55Ø again
56Ø INX
57Ø INY
58Ø LDA (comline),Y
59Ø AND ≠&DF
600 CMP com, X
610 BEQ again
62Ø LDA com,X
63Ø CMP ≠&FE
64Ø BEQ mine
65Ø restore
66Ø PLY
67Ø PLX
68Ø PLA
69Ø nothelp
7ØØ RTS
71Ø \
72Ø help
73Ø JSR osnewl
74Ø LDX ≠&FF
75Ø JSR helploop
76Ø JSR helploop
77Ø JSR osnewl
78Ø RTS
79Ø \
8ØØ helplo∩p
810 INX
82Ø LDA title,X
```

Listing 4 3 continued

```
83Ø BEQ done
 84Ø JSR &FFE3
 85Ø BRA helploop
 86Ø done
 87Ø RTS
 88Ø mine
 89Ø JSR help
 9ØØ LDX ≠255
 910 more
 92Ø INX
 93Ø LDA lists,X
 94Ø BMI alldone
 95Ø JSR &FFE3
 96∅ BRA more
 97Ø alldone
 98Ø PLY
 99Ø PLX
IØØØ PLA
IØIØ LDA ≠Ø
1Ø2Ø RTS
1030 com
1040 EQUS COMMANDS
1Ø5Ø EQUB &FE
1060 command
IØ7Ø EQUS
            Commands '
1080 EQUB Ø
IØ9Ø lists
IIØØ EQUS "
             COMPRESS"
IIIØ EQUB I3
112Ø EQUS "
             EXPAND"
113Ø EQUB 13
114Ø EQUB &FF
115Ø ]
116Ø NEXT
117Ø ENDPROC
```

Listing 4 4 Extra help information can be called by the user Save as HELP4

```
1Ø REM Interactive *HELP
2Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
4Ø
5Ø PROCassemble
6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6
7Ø END
8Ø
```

Listing 4 4 continued

```
9Ø DEF PROCassemble
1ØØ osnewl=&FFE7
IIØ oswrch=&FFEE
12Ø osasci=&FFE3
130 osrdch=&FFE0
140 FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
15Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
16Ø [
17Ø OPT pass
18Ø EQUB Ø
19Ø EQUW Ø
200 JMP service
21Ø EQUB &82
22Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
23Ø EQUB Î
24Ø title
25Ø EQUS "Help Test ROM"
26Ø EQUB Ø
27Ø
    version
28Ø EOUS ' 1 ØØ'
29Ø EQUB Ø
    offset
3ØØ
31Ø EOUB Ø
32Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
33Ø EQUB Ø
34Ø service
35Ø CMP ≠9
36Ø BEQ help
37Ø CMP ≠24
38Ø BEQ interact
39Ø RTS
4ØØ \
4IØ
    help
42Ø JSR osnewl
43Ø LDX ≠&FF
44Ø JSR helploop
45Ø JSR helploop
46Ø JSR osnewl
47Ø RTS
48Ø \
49Ø helploop
5ØØ INX
510 LDA title,X
52Ø BEQ done
53Ø JSR &FFE3
54Ø BRA helploop
55Ø done
56Ø RTS
```

Listing 4 4 continued

```
57Ø \
58Ø interact
59Ø LDX ≠255
600 first
6ÎØ INX
62Ø LDA message,X
63Ø BEQ doneÎ
64Ø JSR oswrch
65Ø BRA first
66Ø doneÎ
67Ø JSR osrdch
68Ø AND ≠&DF
69Ø CMP ≠ASC('Y")
700 BEQ carryon
710 RTS
72Ø carryon
73Ø INX
740 LDA message,X
75Ø JSR osascı
76Ø BPL carryon
77Ø RTS
78Ø \
79Ø message
800 EQUS "Do you wish more "
810 EQUS 'help? (Y/N)"
82Ø EQUB Ø
83Ø EQUB 13
84Ø EQUS "The following commands "
85Ø EQUS "are available"
86Ø EQUB 13
87Ø EQUS "within the Master ROM "
88Ø EQUB 13
89Ø EQUS " COMPRESS - compacts a "
900 EQUS "graphics screen
910 EQUB 13
920 EQUS " EXPAND
                    - unpacks a "
93Ø EQUS "graphics screen"
94Ø EQUB 13
95Ø EQUB 255
96Ø ]
97Ø NEXT
98Ø ENDPROC
```

Chapter Five Interpreters

Command Action (service call 4)

When the MOS encounters an unrecognised command it issues service call 4 to each ROM in turn As with *HELP, the vector at &F2 (comvec) is used with the Y register, and contains the start address of the unrecognised command. It does not point to the asterisk but to the first character after the asterisk. If the ROM cannot recognise the command as one of its own then it must restore all registers to their original values and perform a simple RTS. The command is then offered to the disc or net filing systems. If the command is recognised, the service coding should jump to the correct routine within Once complete the registers need not be restored, but the accumulator MUST be loaded with \$\mathfrak{\textit{9}}\$

LDA ≠Ø

before an RTS is performed. This tells the MOS the command has been recognised and acted upon, so it will not be offered to any of the other ROMs or filing systems.

Writing the Interpreter

What is an interpreter? In fact, it is no different from its linguistic counterpart - a device for identifying and translating, in this case commands which are strings of characters in a certain order The ROM image that we will construct in this chapter will contain three commands, although only two will be of immediate practical use. The commands will be

*ITALICS - does nothing initially

*MODERN - selects a 'modern' style character font

*STANDARD - reselects the normal character font

*MODERN then will redefine the shape of the letters in the Master's character font so they look 'modern' when printed on the screen (except in mode 7) Figure 5 I shows the appearance of the font I will use program 4 3 from Chapter 4 (saved as 'HELP3'), as the basis of the interpreter

This is the Modern char

Figure 5 1 Character style selected by *MODERN

We trap service call 4 by comparing and branching

CMP ≠4 BEQ unrecognised

Identifying the command is performed in a similar way to trapping an extended *HELP command name It involves comparing the unrecognised command against a table of commands - the command table In BASIC this would be

INPUT 'Command" com\$
addr%=Ø
REPEAT
addr%=addr%+Î
READ table\$
UNTIL table\$=com\$ OR table\$="END"
ON addr% GOTO 500, 600, 700, 800
DATA "ITALICS"
DATA "MODERN"
DATA "STANDARD"
DATA 'END"

The command is found and compared against the command table, until it is recognised or the end of the table is reached. If the command is identified then its address must also be found - here a variable is used to

hold it which is incremented each time through the REPEAT UNTIL loop

Translating this into code is not too hard but you will need to study the following assembler carefully

```
unrecognised
LDX ≠255
                 \ start command table index
DEY
                 \ decrement comvec index
PHY
                 \ keep a copy on the stack
 identify
INX
                 \ increment X index
INY
                 \ increment Y index
LDA
                 \ get byte from unrecognised
     (comvec),Y
                 \ command
AND ≠&DF
                 \ force to upper case
CMP comtable,X
                 \ compare against command table
BEQ identify
                 \ if it compares try next byte
```

This code is very similar to the extended help facility in chapter 4 Now consider the command table itself

```
comtable
EQUS "MODERN"
EQUB modern DIV 256
EQUB modern MOD 256
EQUS ITALICS"
EQUB italics DIV 256
EQUB italics MOD 256
EQUS "STANDARD
EQUB standard DIV 256
EQUB standard MOD 256
EQUB &FF
```

This consists of the ASCII string of each command name, minus the asterisk, followed by the address, high byte first, of each command. The command table is terminated by &FF Figure 5 2 shows this diagramatically

MODERN		
modern high byte		
modern low byte		
ITALICS		
ıtalıcs hıqh byte		
italics low byte		
STANDARD		
standard high byte		
standard low byte		
&FF		
		

Figure 5 2 Construction of command table

As the execution address of any command is going to be within a ROM, it will have a high byte of &8% or higher This is useful as it means that it will set the negative flag when loaded into the accumulator Carrying on with the code from 'identify' above gives

```
LDA comtable,X \ get unlike byte from command \ table

BMI address \ if negative must be address
```

Of course it may not be an address it may simply be that comvec and comtable are not alike Therefore we need a means of moving onto the start of the next command in the command table. The way to do this is by finding the first address byte and incrementing the X register by one

```
moveon
INX \ increment X
LDA comtable,X \ get next byte from table
BPL moveon \ if not negative do again
INX \ increase X by one
PLY \ restore original value of Y
PHY \ save once again for next time
JMP identify \ and repeat identifying loop
```

The routine 'address' needs to test to see if the negative byte is in fact &FF, the end of command table marker If it is not then the accumulator will contain the high byte of the command's execution address. This along with the low byte can be placed into a zero page vector and an indirect jump to the interpreted command's address performed

```
address
CMP ≠&FF
                 \ is it top of command table?
                 \ branch if not
BNE notFF
                 \ else balance stack
PLY
                 \ and branch to return routine
BRA alldone
 notFF
STA &39
                 \ else save high byte
                 \ increment X
                 \ and get low byte
LDA comtable,X
                 \ and save
STA &38
                 \ and go to it!
JMP (&38)
```

I have made a habit of first testing interpreters before actually adding the code that makes each individual command To do this I give them all the same execution address and then get the commands to do

something obvious such as make a beep on the speaker, or print a letter on the screen

modern italics standard LDA ≠7 JMP osascı

Once the command has been executed, the stack, which was previously pushed with the register contents, must be pulled and the accumulator loaded with Ø

found PLY PLY PLX PLA LDA ≠Ø RTS

The extra PLY is to balance the extra PHY made at the

start of 'unrecognised' and subsequently in 'moveon'
Listing 5 I puts all this into play Enter this and save it under the filename 'INTERP' (We'll be using this again later) RUN the program and initialise the ROM Now try typing any of the commands and you should get a beep on the speaker

Debugging Interpreters

As the programs herein all contain checksum calculators it should be easy for you to get programs running correctly before they are transferred into sideways The trouble starts when you write your own - no checksums Debugging ROM images can be infuriating but is ultimately rewarding' So I'll provide some useful pointers

Without doubt the most common cause of programs crashing is bad stack management. This shows up in two main ways First, when you execute the command you get a message something like

at line 23Ø

on the screen Of course the line number will probably be different and vary The second manifestation is that you execute the command and nothing happens other than a couple of returns are echoed to the screen In both cases check your listing and ensure every push is balanced by a pull I often keep using pushes instead of pulls!

Always test your commands fully They may only crash after a bit of continuous use I do this by putting REPEAT UNTIL loop To test the above them inside a interpreter I used

IØ REPEAT

2Ø *MODERN

3Ø *ITALICS

4Ø *STANDARD

5Ø UNTIL Ø

Once you set this running you'll get a continuous beep And leave it running for a few minutes - have a coffee - if it's still making a noise when you get back you're okay'

If the command executes but then accesses the disc or filing system then you have forgotten to do a LDA $\neq \emptyset$

before the RTS

If all else fails you'll need the help of a machine code monitor program, such as BBC Soft's Monitor ROM This will enable you to stee through the program and see (hopefully) just where it's going wrong

Writing Commands

There are three stages in writing commands for use in sideways format

Stage I Write it in BASIC where possible! This has advantage of being quick and allows you calculate tabs for screen printing etc, with minimum of fuss

Stage 2 Convert it to machine code, but get it running in normal memory first Make sure you don't use addresses within the code itself to store things (you won't be able to do so once the program is in sideways RAM!) and make it as self-contained and compact as possible

add it to your sideways RAM assembly Stage 3

listing

Now let's apply these rules to our ROM image The first step is to design the modern character font with a suitable program or pencil and paper Once this is done, all the characters can be placed into a BASIC program in the form of VDU23 statements When run this should, if correct, redefine the character font to take a modern appearance

The *STANDARD command can now be tested To return to the standard font, the character font needs to be imploded using *FX20,0 To convert all this to machine code, we need to create a loop to read in data items and send them to the VDU output stream using OSWRCH The total length of data can be optimised by including the 23 and ASCII character code inside the printing loop

```
modern
LDA ≠data DIV 256
                      \ get high byte of data
STA &7I
                      \ save it
LDA ≠data DIV 256
                      \ get low byte of data
STA &7Ø
                      \ save it
LDA ≠33
                      \ start character is ASCII 33
STA &72
                      \ save it
 outerloop
LDY ≠Ø
LDX ≠Ø
LDA ≠23
                   \ do VDU23
\ get character code
JSR oswrch
LDA &72
                     \ send it to VDU stream
JSR oswrch
 innerloop
LDA (&7Ø),Y
                      \ get data byte
                   \ send it to VDU stream
\ increment low byte address
\ branch if not zero
\ else increment high byte
JSR oswrch
INC &7Ø
BEQ noh1
INC &71
nohı
INX
                      \ increment counter
CPX ≠8
                      \ 8 bytes sent yet?
BNE innerloop
                      \ branch if not
LDA &72
                      \ get character
INC A
                      \ increment by one
STA &72
                      \ save result
CMP ≠127
                      \ all done yet?
BNE outerloop
                      \ repeat until all done
```

The coding for *STANDARD is easy, and takes just a few lines of assembler

```
standard
LDA ≠2∅
LDX ≠∅
LDY ≠∅
JSR osbyte \ do *FX2∅,∅
```

Listing 5 2 combines both of these segments Note that line numbering starts at 2000 This is because we can use listing 5 \hat{I} ('INTERP') as the basis, and cut down on typing So enter this and *SPOOL it to a file Use

55

the filename SCOMMS - S for Spool, COMMS for Commands In case you've forgotten, type in

*SPOOL SCOMMS LIST *SPOOL

The program will not run as it stands so don't try! Now reload 'INTERP' and make these additions and changes

Add line 55 PROCread

Change line 70 *SRWRITE 5000 +500 8000 6

Add line II5 oswrch=&FFEE Delete lines I790, I800 and I820

Add line 1915 RTS

Delete lines 1920 to 2040 inclusive

Now *EXEC in the spooled listing

*EXEC SCOMMS

Save the program under the filename 'MODERN' RUN and initialise as normal Then enter mode 6 and type

*MODERN OLD

LIST

to see the effect *STANDARD makes everthing normal again *ITALICS will still give a beep, though you can of course extend it to give you italic text (The disc which contains all the listings in this book also has the VDU codes for this in case you don't feel like designing your own)

Gaining Workspace

Your ROMs will at times require workspace -- areas of memory in which they can place information. You need to choose this with care as it could be the space used by other ROMs. The *MODERN code used three locations in zero page, &7\$\mathbeloe{\epsilon}\$, &7\$\mathbf{I}\$ and &72. These are of course in the user area and are free for use, but it is not good practice to go around changing locations that are meant to be free and available to normal programs. One way to overcome this is to save the contents of memory somewhere before using it and then restore it to its original value before returning. I tend to to save memory from &7\$\mathbeloe{\epsilon}\$ to &8\$\mathbeloe{\epsilon}\$ on the very bottom of the hardware stack from &1\$\mathbeloe{\epsilon}\$ The stack pointer should

never get this low -- I'd love to see a program that does it! The two routines to push and pull are

```
pushzero
LDX ≠255
               \ initialise index
 loop
INX
                \ increment index
                \ get byte
LDA &7Ø,X
STA &ÎØØ,X
                \ and save it
CPX ≠ÎF
                \ all done?
BNE loop
                \ no, continue \ and return
RTS
pullzero
LDX ≠255
               \ initialise index
 loop
INX
                \ increment index
LDA &ÎØØ,X
                \ get byte
STA &7Ø,X
                \ and save it
CPX ≠ÎF
                \ all done?
BNE loop
                \ no, continue
RTS
                \ and return
```

I tend to use both as subroutine calls, ie using JSR As a rule, call pushzero after you push the registers and pullzero before you pull them

Listing 5 1 Test interpreter (save as INTERP)

```
IØ REM Test Interpreter
20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
40
5Ø PROCassemble
6Ø PROCchecksum
7Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6
8Ø END
9Ø
IØØ DEF PROCassemble
ffØ osnewl=&FFE7
12Ø osasci=&FFE3
130 comline=&F2
140 FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
15Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
16Ø [
170 OPT pass
18Ø EQUB Ø
19Ø EOUW Ø
200 JMP service
21Ø EQUB &82
22Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
23Ø EOUB I
24Ø
    title
25Ø EQUS "Test Interpreter ROM"
26Ø EOUB Ø
27Ø version
28Ø EQUS " Î ØØ"
29Ø EQUB Ø
    offset
3ØØ
310 EQUB Ø
32Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
33Ø EQUB Ø
34Ø service
35Ø PHA
36Ø PHX
37Ø PHY
38Ø CMP ≠9
39Ø BNE nothelp
400 LDA (comline),Y
41Ø CMP ≠13
42Ø BNE check
43Ø JSR help
44Ø LDX ≠255
45Ø details
46Ø INX
470 LDA command,X
48Ø BEQ donecommand
```

Listing 5 I continued

```
49Ø JSR &FFE3
500 BRA details
510 donecommand
52Ø JSR osnewl
53Ø BRA restore
54Ø \
55Ø check
56Ø LDX ≠255
57Ø DEY
58Ø again
59Ø INX
6ØØ INY
610 LDA (comline),Y
62Ø AND ≠&DF
63Ø CMP com, X
64Ø BEQ again
65Ø LDA com, X
66Ø CMP ≠&FE
67Ø BEQ mine
68Ø restore
69Ø PLY
7ØØ PLX
71Ø PLA
72Ø RTS
73Ø \
740 nothelp
75Ø CMP ≠4
76Ø BEQ unrecognised
77Ø BRA alldone
78Ø \
79Ø
    help
800 JSR osnewl
81Ø LDX ≠&FF
82Ø JSR helploop
83Ø JSR helploop
84Ø JSR osnewl
85Ø RTS
86Ø \
87Ø helploop
88Ø INX
89Ø LDA title.X
900 BEQ done
91Ø JSR &FFE3
92Ø BRA helploop
93Ø done
94Ø RTS
95Ø\
96Ø mine
```

Listing 5 I continued 97Ø JSR help 98Ø LDX ≠255

99Ø more **IØØØ INX**

IØIØ LDA lists,X

IØ2Ø BMI alldone 1030 JSR &FFE3 1040 BRA more

1Ø5Ø \ IØ6Ø

alldone **1070 PLY**

IØ8Ø PLX 1090 PLA

IIØØ RTS

/ ØIII II2Ø com

1130 EQUS "COMMANDS"

II4Ø EQUB &FE

1150 command II6Ø EQUS' Commands"

117Ø EQUB Ø

Q811 lists MODERN"

1190 EOUS "

12ØØ EQUB 13 ITALICS"

1210 EQUS " 122Ø EQUB 13

123Ø EQUS " STANDARD"

124Ø EQUB 13

125Ø EOUB &FF

126Ø \

127Ø unrecognised

128Ø LDX #255

129Ø DEY

13ØØ PHY 131Ø identify

132Ø INX

133Ø INY

1340 LDA (comline),Y

135Ø AND ≠&DF

1360 CMP comtable.X

137Ø BEQ identify

1380 LDA comtable,X

139Ø BMI address

I4ØØ \

I4IØ moveon

142Ø INX

143Ø LDA comtable,X

1440 BPL moveon

Listing 5 $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$ continued

```
145Ø BNE notend
146Ø PLY
147Ø BRA alldone
148Ø \
1490 notend
15ØØ INX
1510 PLY
152Ø PHY
153Ø JMP identify
154Ø \
155Ø address
156Ø CMP ≠&FF
157Ø BNE notFF
158Ø PLY
159Ø BRA alldone
1600 notFF
161Ø \
162Ø STA &39
163Ø INX
1640 LDA comtable,X
165Ø STA &38
166Ø JMP (&38)
167Ø \
168Ø
     comtable
169Ø EQUS "MODERN"
1700 EQUB modern DIV 256
1710 EQUB modern MOD 256
172Ø EQUS "ITALICS"
173Ø EQUB italics DIV 256
1740 EQUB italics MOD 256
175Ø EQUS "STANDARD"
1760 EQUB standard DIV 256
177Ø EQUB standard MOD 256
178Ø EQUB &FF
179Ø \
1800 modern
ISIØ italics
1820 standard
183Ø LDA ≠7
1840 JSR osascı
185Ø \
186Ø found
187Ø PLY
188Ø PLY
189Ø PLX
1900 PLA
191Ø LDA ≠Ø
192Ø RTS
```

Listing 5 I continued

1930]
1940 NEXT
1950 ENDPROC
1960
1970 DEF PROCchecksum
1980 X%=0
1990 FOR N%=&5000 TO &5136
2000 X%=X%+?N%
2010 NEXT
2020 IF X%=35915 THEN ENDPROC
2030 VDU 7
2040 PRINT"Assembler error - re check!"
2050 STOP

Listing 5 2 Font command code (these lines should be saved as SCOMMS and SPOOLed onto listing 5 Γ , see text for details)

55 PROCread 2000 standard 2ØÎØ LDA ≠2Ø 2Ø2Ø LDX ≠Ø 2Ø3Ø LDY ≠Ø 2040 JSR &FFF4 2050 JMP found 2Ø6Ø \ 2Ø7Ø modern 2Ø8Ø LDA ≠data DIV 256 2Ø9Ø STA &7I 2100 LDA ≠data MOD 256 211Ø STA &7Ø 212Ø LDA ≠33 213Ø STA &72 2**I**4Ø outerloop 215Ø LDY ≠Ø 216Ø LDX ≠Ø 217Ø LDA ≠23 218Ø JSR oswrch 219Ø LDA &72 2200 JSR oswrch 22ÎØ innerloop 222Ø LDA (&7Ø),Y 223Ø JSR oswrch 224Ø INC &7Ø 225Ø BNE nohi 226Ø INC &7I

227Ø noh1

Listing 5 2 continued

```
228Ø INX
229Ø CPX ≠8
2300 BNE innerloop
231Ø LDA &72
232Ø INC A
233Ø STA &72
234Ø CMP ≠127
235Ø BNE outerloop
236Ø \
237Ø JMP found
238Ø
239Ø
      data
24ØØ
     }
24IØ NEXT
242Ø ENDPROC
243Ø
244Ø DEF PROCread
245Ø RESTORE
246Ø DATA 12,12,12,12,12,0,12,0
247Ø DATA 46,46,46,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø
248Ø DATA 23,23,63,23,63,23,23,Ø
249Ø DATA 6,31,44,31,3,63,12,Ø
25ØØ DATA 48,39,6,12,24,39,3,Ø
251Ø DATA 28,46,46,28,45,39,27,Ø
252Ø DATA 6,12,24,0,0,0,0,0
253Ø DATA 6,12,24,24,12,6,Ø
254Ø DATA 24,12,6,6,6,12,24,Ø
255Ø DATA Ø,12,63,30,63,12,0,0
256Ø DATA Ø,12,12,63,12,12,Ø,Ø
257Ø DATA Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,12,12,24
258Ø DATA Ø,Ø,Ø,63,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø
259Ø DATA Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,12,12,Ø
26ØØ DATA Ø,3,6,12,24,48,Ø,Ø
261Ø DATA 3Ø,39,47,63,55,39,3Ø,Ø
262Ø DATA 12,28,12,12,12,12,63,Ø
263Ø DATA 3Ø,39,3,6,12,24,63,Ø
264Ø DATA 3Ø,39,3,14,3,39,3Ø,Ø
265Ø DATA 6,14,3Ø,46,63,6,6,Ø
266Ø DATA 63,48,62,3,3,39,3Ø,Ø
267Ø DATA 14,24,48,62,39,39,30,Ø
268Ø DATA 63,3,6,12,24,24,24,Ø
269Ø DATA 3Ø,39,39,3Ø,39,39,3Ø,Ø
27ØØ DATA 3Ø,39,39,31,3,6,28,Ø
2710 DATA 0,0,12,12,0,12,12,0
272Ø DATA Ø,Ø,I2,I2,Ø,I2,I2,24
273Ø DATA 6,12,24,48,24,12,6,Ø
274Ø DATA Ø,Ø,63,Ø,63,Ø,Ø,Ø
275Ø DATA 24,12,6,3,6,12,24,Ø
```

Listing 5 2 continued

```
3Ø,39,6,12,12,Ø,12,Ø
276Ø
     DATA
           30,39,47,43,47,48,30,0
277Ø
     DATA
278Ø
     DATA
           30,39,39,63,39,39,39,0
           62,39,39,62,39,39,62,Ø
279Ø
     DATA
28ØØ
     DATA
           30,39,48,48,48,39,30,0
           60,46,39,39,39,46,60,0
281Ø
     DATA
           63,48,48,62,48,48,63,0
282Ø
     DATA
           63,48,48,62,48,48,48,0
283Ø
     DATA
284Ø
     DATA
           30,39,48,47,39,39,30,0
           39,39,39,63,39,39,39,Ø
285Ø
     DATA
           63, 12, 12, 12, 12, 12, 63, Ø
286Ø
     DATA
287Ø
     DATA
           31,6,6,6,6,46,28,Ø
288Ø
     DATA
           39,46,6Ø,56,6Ø,46,39,Ø
           48,48,48,48,48,48,63,0
289Ø
     DATA
29ØØ
     DATA
           35,55,63,43,43,35,35,Ø
           39,39,55,63,47,39,39,Ø
291Ø
     DATA
292Ø
           30,39,39,39,39,30,0
     DATA
           62,39,39,62,48,48,48,0
293Ø
     DATA
           30,39,39,39,43,46,23,0
294Ø
     DATA
           62,39,39,62,46,39,39,8
295Ø
     DATA
           30,39,48,30,3,39,30,0
296Ø
     DATA
           63, 12, 12, 12, 12, 12, 12, Ø
297Ø
     DATA
           39,39,39,39,39,39,30,0
298Ø
     DATA
           39,39,39,39,30,12,0
299Ø
     DATA
           35,35,43,43,63,55,35,Ø
3ØØØ
     DATA
3ØIØ
           39,39,3Ø,12,3Ø,39,39,Ø
     DATA
3Ø2Ø
     DATA
           39,39,39,30,12,12,12,0
           63,3,6,12,24,48,63,0
3Ø3Ø
     DATA
3Ø4Ø
      DATA
           62,48,48,48,48,48,62,$
3Ø5Ø
           Ø,48,24,12,6,3,Ø,Ø
      DATA
           31,3,3,3,3,31,0
3Ø6Ø
      DATA
           12,30,39,3,0,0,0,0
3Ø7Ø
      DATA
3Ø8Ø
      DATA Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,127
3Ø9Ø
      DATA
           14,23,24,62,24,24,63,Ø
3TØØ
      DATA Ø,Ø,3Ø,3,3Î,39,3Î,Ø
           48,48,62,39,39,39,62,0
3IIØ
      DATA
           \emptyset, \emptyset, 3\emptyset, 39, 48, 39, 3\emptyset, \emptyset
312Ø
      DATA
           3,3,31,39,39,39,31,Ø
313Ø
      DATA
           Ø,Ø,3Ø,39,63,48,3Ø,Ø
314Ø
      DATA
315Ø
      DATA
           14,24,24,62,24,24,24,0
316Ø
      DATA Ø,Ø,31,39,39,31,3,3Ø
      DATA 48,48,62,39,39,39,39,Ø
DATA 12,0,28,12,12,12,30,0
317Ø
318Ø
           12,0,28,12,12,12,12,56
319Ø
      DATA
32ØØ
            48,48,39,46,60,46,39,0
      DATA
           28,12,12,12,12,12,30,0
321Ø DATA
322Ø DATA Ø,Ø,23,63,43,43,35,Ø
323Ø DATA Ø,Ø,62,39,39,39,39,Ø
```

Listing 5 2 continued

```
324Ø DATA Ø,Ø,3Ø,39,39,39,3Ø,Ø
325Ø DATA Ø,Ø,62,39,39,62,48,48
326Ø DATA Ø,Ø,31,39,39,31,3,3
327Ø DATA Ø,Ø,46,55,48,48,48,Ø
328Ø DATA Ø,Ø,31,48,3Ø,3,62,Ø
329Ø DATA 24,24,62,24,24,24,14,Ø
3300 DATA 0,0,39,39,39,39,31,0
331Ø DATA Ø,Ø,39,39,39,3Ø,12,Ø
332Ø DATA Ø,Ø,35,43,43,63,23,Ø
333Ø DATA Ø,Ø,39,3Ø,12,3Ø,39,Ø
334Ø DATA Ø,Ø,39,39,39,31,3,3Ø
335Ø DATA Ø,Ø,63,6,12,24,63,Ø
336Ø DATA 6,12,12,56,12,12,6,Ø
337Ø DATA 12,12,12,0,12,12,12,0
338Ø DATA 24,12,12,7,12,12,24,Ø
339Ø DATA 17,43,7,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø,Ø
34ØØ
341Ø C%=Ø
342Ø FOR R%=Ø TO 751
343Ø READ D%
344Ø R%?O%=D%
345Ø C%=C%+D%
346Ø NEXT
347Ø IF C%=18388 THEN ENDPROC
348Ø VDU 7
349Ø PRINT "Error in data
35ØØ STOP
351Ø
352Ø DEF PROCchecksum
353Ø N&=Ø
354Ø FOR R%=&5ØØØ TO &5178
355Ø N%=N%+?R%
356Ø NEXT
357Ø IF N%=44796 THEN ENDPROC
358Ø VDU 7
359Ø PRINT "Assembler error
36ØØ STOP
```

Chapter Six **OSBYTE and OSWORD**

Service calls 7 and 8 are provided to allow implement your own OSBYTE and OSWORD calls great way to add clever little routines to your Master,

particularly those that you use regularly

For instance, I have over the past year or so been adding to a ROM image The ROM is a conversion ROM It an increasing number of handy machine provides conversion routines, such as hex to decimal, floating mathematical routines than Rather point and including them in each machine code program I write, I just access an OSBYTE or OSWORD call The one major disadvantage here is that without the conversion the machine code won't work, and in many cases the routines proper at a later stage to add I have but it does allow me to get on and get the task in hand working correctly first without having to write assembler programs to do it I have presented a couple

the routines here to οf show how easy OSBYTE and OSWORD calls are to implement

starting you will need to find If you are hoping to number to use OSBYTE and OSWORD sell your firmware commercially then you can ask Acorn Computers to assign you a number officially Once this has been done you are the bona fida user of that number no other commercial software should clash course it is unlikely that Acorn will give you a number unless it is for commercial purposes, so just one that is not used by the Master or any of the In the examples below I use &64 software running on it

OSBYTE or OSWORD call When the MOS encounters a new

it issues service call 7 or 8 respectively Before doing this however it will place the contents of the accumulator, X and Y registers in zero page locations, thus

```
&EF accumulator &FØ X register &FI Y register
```

It is important to know this as both OSBYTE and OSWORD calls use these registers to pass information

The first thing your polling routine should do is to extract the contents of &EF and see if the call is for you If it is then the index register contents can be extracted from &FØ and &FT In the case of an OSWORD call these two locations can be used as a vector to an information parameter block On completion any information that is to be returned should be placed into the relevant registers and copied to the respective zero page locations. The accumulator should be set to zero to tell the MOS that the service call has been successful

OSBYTE

An OSBYTE call is made by placing the call number in the accumulator and any further information required by the call in the X and Y registers. On return from the call the index registers will contain any results or information

Listing 6 I implements OSBYTE call &64, or *FXIØØ if you prefer It will convert the number passed to it in the X register to its ASCII counterpart with the character codes returned in the X and Y registers, high and low bytes respectively For example, if X contained 255 then on return X and Y would contain &46, the ASCII code for 'F', ie 255=&FF The OSBYTE extraction code can be found from line II6Ø

```
osbyte
PHA
               \ push all registers
PHX
PHY
LDA & EF
                \ get call number
CMP ≠&64
                \ is it us?
BEQ yes64
JMP restore
               \ yes, branch
               \ else return
 yes64
LDA &FØ
                \ get X register
PHA
                \ save it on stack
```

```
\ move high nibble to low nibble
LSR A
LSR A
LSR A
LSR A
                \ perform conversion
JSR convert
               \ save high character in 'X'
STA &FØ
                \ retrieve byte
PLA
                \ perform conversion on low nibble
JSR convert
               \ save low character in 'Y'
STA &FI
                \ balance stack
PLY
PLX
PLA
                \ make sure registers match
LDY &FI
LDX &FØ
                \ signal to MOS
LDA ≠Ø
                \ and return
RTS
```

Listing 6 f is shown below in full. If you have listing 4 3 from Chapter 4 ('HELP3') available then you can use this as the base and make the following additions and alterations

Listing 6 2 tests the new OSBYTE call provided by listing 6 I and provides a tutorial by showing how easy it is to use

OSWORD

OSWORD calls are performed by placing the call number into the accumulator and then seeding an address into the index registers before calling &FFFI The address is in fact that of a parameter block anywhere within RAM that contains further information for the call to manipulate Information is passed back to the calling program via the parameter block As with OSBYTE, locations &EF, &FØ and &FI contain the register contents

If you box clever then a single OSWORD number can meet all your needs as the listing below illustrates You can use the first byte in the parameter block to contain a number which your OSWORD routine looks at

before deciding what action to take In this way a single OSWORD number, &65 in this case, can be used to call up to 256 different functions, simply by placing a number from Ø to 255 in the first parameter block byte If this is not enough, use the second byte as well that'll give you over 60,000 possible functions! I don't quite go that far, but two functions are possible here Placing a I or I29 in the first byte of the parameter block will allow you to use the following two routines

- I Convert two bytes into a four-byte hex ASCII string
- 129 As above but print it as well

Before you write your OSWORD call, work out how the parameter block will be constructed OSWORD &65 requires this set-up

Address	Function
XY+Ø	action byte
XY+Î	low byte to be converted
XY+2	high byte to be converted
XY+3	high order ASCII character
XY+4	ASCII character
XY+6	ASCII character
XY+7	low order ASCII character

For example, if $XY+\emptyset$ contained I and $XY+I=\&8\emptyset$ and XY+2=&FF, then on return from the call the parameter block would look like this

Address	Contents
XY+Ø	Î
I+YX	& 8ø
XY+2	&FF
XY+3	ASC"F"
XY+4	ASC'F'
XY+6	ASC"8"
XY+7	ASC "Ø"

As with OSBYTE, the OSWORD coding is not difficult to follow

```
osword
PHA \ save registers
PHX
PHY
LDA ≠&65 \ is it ours?
BEQ yes65 \ branch if so
```

```
\ else return
JMP restore
 yes65
LDY ≠Ø
                 \ clear index
                 \ get action byte from parameter
LDA(&FØ),Y
                 \ block
AND ≠&7F
                 \ mask off high (printing) bit
                 \ is it a I?
CMP ≠I
BEQ hexascı
                 \ continue if so
                 \ else return
JMP restore
 hexascı
                  \ increment index
INY
                 \ get low byte from parameter
LDA (&FØ),Y
                  \ block
                  \ save it on stack
PHA
                  \ increment index
INY
                  \ get high byte from parameter
LDA (&FØ),Y
                  \ block
                  \ convert and save in parameter
JSR hexconvert
                  \ block
                  \ get low byte
PLA
                  \ convert and save in parameter
JSR hexconvert
                  \ block
                  \ clear index again
LDY ≠Ø
                  \ get action byte again
LDA (&FØ),Y
                  \ if negative then print ASCII
BMI display
                  \ string
JMP alldone
                  \ else return
```

You can now see why I chose \$129 for printing It's not the number itself I'm interested in, but the fact that it has the top bit set

```
129 = &81 = IØØØ ØØØI
```

This means that any of your routines can be printed by the same piece of code if they conform to the same parameter block layout. The printing routine is

```
display
LDY \( \neq 3 \)
print
LDA (&F\( \psi \)),Y \quad \q
```

Both of these routines can be seen in listing 6 3 As before if you have listing 4 3 ('HELP3') handy you can

use this as a base for the OSWORD listing by making the following changes $% \left(1\right) =\left(1\right) +\left(1\right) +$

Listing 6 4 puts OSWORD &65 into action

```
Listing 6 Î
             Implements new OSBYTE call &64 Save as
        Use listing 4 3 (HELP3) as the basis for this
OSBYTE
   10 REM Implement OSBYTE
   20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø
   5Ø PROCassemble
   55 PROCchecksum
   6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6
   7Ø END
   8Ø DEF PROCassemble
   9Ø osnewl=&FFE7
  IØØ comline=&F2
  IIØ FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
  12Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
  13Ø [
  140 OPT pass
  15Ø EQUB Ø
  16Ø EQUW Ø
  17Ø JMP service
  18Ø EQUB &82
  19Ø EOUB offset MOD 256
  2ØØ EQUB I
      title
  2ÎØ
  22Ø EQUS 'Osbyte Extension ROM"
  23Ø EQUB Ø
  24Ø
      version
  25Ø EQUS " Î ØØ"
  26Ø EQUB Ø
  27Ø
      offset
  28Ø EQUB Ø
  29Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
  3ØØ EQUB Ø
  3ÎØ
       service
  3ÎÎ CMP ≠7
  312 BNE notseven
  3Î3 JMP osbyte
  3T4
       notseven
  32Ø CMP ≠9
  33Ø BNE nothelp
  34Ø PHA
   35Ø PHX
```

36Ø PHY

38Ø CMP ≠13 39Ø BNE check 4ØØ JSR help 41Ø LDX ≠255 42Ø details

37Ø LDA (comline),Y

Listing 6 I continued

```
43Ø INX
440 LDA command,X
45 Ø BEQ donecommand
46Ø JSR &FFE3
47Ø BRA details
48Ø donecommand
49Ø JSR osnewl
500 BRA restore
51Ø \
52Ø check
53Ø LDX ≠255
54Ø DEY
55Ø again
56Ø INX
57Ø INY
58Ø LDA (comline),Y
59Ø AND ≠&DF
600 CMP com, X
61Ø BEQ again
620 LDA com, X
63Ø CMP ≠&FE
64Ø BEQ mine
65Ø restore
66Ø PLY
67Ø PLX
68Ø PLA
69Ø nothelp
7ØØ RTS
71Ø \
72Ø
    help
73Ø JSR osnewl
74Ø LDX ≠&FF
75Ø JSR helploop
76Ø JSR helploop
77/ JSR osnewl
78Ø RTS
79Ø \
800 helploop
81Ø INX
82Ø LDA title,X
83Ø BEO done
84Ø JSR &FFE3
85Ø BRA helploop
86Ø done
87Ø RTS
88Ø mine
89Ø JSR help
9ØØ LDX ≠255
```

136Ø STA &FI

```
Listing 6 I continued
  910 more
  92Ø INX
  930 LDA lists.X
  94Ø BMI alldone
  95Ø JSR &FFE3
  96Ø BRA more
  97Ø alldone
  98Ø PLY
  99Ø PLX
 IØØØ PLA
 IØIØ LDA ≠Ø
 1Ø2Ø RTS
 IØ3Ø
      COM
 1Ø4Ø EQUS"OSBYTE"
 1Ø5Ø EQUB &FE
 1Ø6Ø
      command
 1070 EQUS" Osbyte
 1080 EQUB Ø
 IØ9Ø
      lısts
 IIØØ EQUS "
               A=&64, X=byte for conversi
on"
 IIIØ EQUB I3
 1120 EQUS " On completion X=hi, Y=lo
 II3Ø EQUB I3
 114Ø EQUB &FF
 115Ø \
 1160 osbyte
 II7Ø PHA
 II8Ø PHX
 II9Ø PHY
 1200 LDA &EF
 121Ø CMP ≠&64
 1220 BEQ yes64
 123Ø JMP restore
 124Ø \
 125Ø
       yes64
  126Ø LDA &FØ
  127Ø PHA
  128Ø LSR A
  129Ø LSR A
  1300 LSR A
  1310 LSR A
  132Ø JSR convert
  133Ø STA &FØ
  134Ø PLA
  135Ø JSR convert
```

Listing 6 I continued

```
137Ø PLY
138Ø PLX
139Ø PLA
1400 LDY &FI
1410 LDX &FØ
142Ø LDA ≠Ø
143Ø RTS
144Ø \
145Ø convert
146Ø AND ≠15
I47Ø CMP ≠IØ
148Ø BCC over
149Ø ADC ≠6
1500 over
151Ø ADC ≠48
152Ø RTS
153Ø ]
154Ø NEXT
155Ø ENDPROC
1560
157Ø DEF PROCchecksum
158Ø N%=Ø
159Ø FOR X%=&5ØØØ TO &5127
1600 N%=N%+7X%
161Ø NEXT
162Ø IF N%=33496 THEN ENDPROC
163Ø VDU 7
1640 PRINT"Assembler error"
165Ø STOP
```

Listing 6 2 Tutorial and test for new OSBYTE Save as OSBTEST

```
IØ REM OSBYTE Tutorial
20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
40
50 MODE 7
60 REPEAT
70 REPEAT
80 INPUT "Enter number in range 1-255
'X%
90 UNTIL X%>0 AND X%<256
100 A%=&64 Y%=0
110 R%=USR(&FFF4)
120 X%=(R% AND &FFFØ0) DIV &FFF
130 Y%=(R% AND &FFFFØ0) DIV &FFFF
```

```
Listing 6 2 continued
```

14Ø PRINT In hex that is " CHR\$(X%) C
HR\$(Y%)
15Ø PRINT
16Ø UNTILØ

Listing 6 3 Creates OSWORD &65 to convert and print binary numbers as ASCII hex string Save as OSWORD Can be built up from listing 4 3 (HELP3)

```
10 REM Implement OSWORD
 20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 4 Ø
 5Ø PROCassemble
 55 PROCchecksum
 6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6
 7Ø END
 80 DEF PROCassemble
 9Ø osnewl=&FFE7
                  osasc1=&FFE3
IØØ comline=&F2
110 FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
12Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
13Ø [
140 OPT pass
15Ø EQUB Ø
16Ø EQUW Ø
170 JMP service
18Ø EQUB &82
190 EQUB offset MOD 256
2ØØ EQUB I
2ÎØ title
22Ø EQUS Osword Extension ROM"
23Ø EQUB Ø
24Ø version
25Ø EQUS ' 1 ØØ"
26Ø EQUB Ø
27Ø offset
28Ø EQUB Ø
290 EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith'
3ØØ EQUB Ø
310 service
311 CMP ≠8
312 BNE noteight
313 JMP osword
314 noteight
32Ø CMP ≠9
```

33Ø BNE nothelp

```
Listing 6 3 continued
```

```
34Ø PHA
35Ø PHX
36Ø PHY
37Ø LDA (comline),Y
38Ø CMP ≠13
39Ø BNE check
400 JSR help
41Ø LDX ≠255
42Ø details
43Ø INX
44Ø LDA command, X
45Ø BEQ donecommand
46Ø JSR &FFE3
47Ø BRA details
48Ø donecommand
49Ø JSR osnewl
500 BRA restore
51Ø \
52Ø check
53Ø LDX ≠255
54Ø DEY
55Ø again
56Ø INX
57Ø INY
58Ø LDA (comline),Y
59Ø AND ≠&DF
600 CMP com, X
610 BEQ again
62Ø LDA com, X
63Ø CMP ≠&FE
64Ø BEQ mine
65Ø restore
66Ø PLY
67Ø PLX
68Ø PLA
69Ø nothelp
7ØØ RTS
71Ø \
72Ø help
73Ø JSR osnewl
74Ø LDX ≠&FF
75Ø JSR helploop
76Ø JSR helploop
77Ø JSR osnewl
78Ø RTS
79Ø \
800 helploop
81Ø INX
```

Î26Ø LDY≠Ø

127Ø LDA (&FØ),Y

Listing 6 3 continued 82Ø LDA title,X 83Ø BEQ done 84Ø JSR &FFE3 85Ø BRA helploop 86Ø done 87Ø RTS 88Ø mine 89Ø JSR help 9ØØ LDX ≠255 91ø more 92Ø INX 93Ø LDA lists,X 94Ø BMI alldone 95Ø JSR &FFE3 96Ø BRA more 97Ø alldone 98Ø PLY 99Ø PLX **IØØØ PLA** ÎØÎØ LDA ≠Ø **I**Ø2Ø RTS 1Ø3Ø com **IØ4Ø EOUS"OSWORD" 1050 EQUB &FE** IØ6Ø command IØ7Ø EQUS' Osword' **IØ8Ø EQUB Ø** IØ9Ø lısts IIØØ EQUS " A=&65, $XY+\emptyset=action$ byte" IIIØ EQUB I3 112Ø EQUS " $XY + \emptyset = 1$ Hex to ASCII' 113Ø EQUB 13 1133 EQUS " XY+Ø=129 Print I II34 EOUB I3 114Ø EQUB &FF 115Ø \ 116Ø osword II7Ø PHA II8Ø PHX 119Ø PHY 1200 LDA &EF 121Ø CMP ≠&65 1220 BEQ yes65 1230 JMP restore yes65 124Ø 125Ø \

Listing 6 3 continued

```
128Ø AND ≠&7F
129Ø CMP ≠1
1300 BEQ hexascı
1310 JMP restore
132Ø \
133Ø
     hexascı
134Ø INY
135Ø LDA (&FØ),Y
136Ø PHA
137Ø INY
138Ø LDA (&FØ),Y
139Ø JSR hexconvert
14ØØ PLA
1410 JSR hexconvert
142Ø LDY≠Ø
143Ø LDA (&FØ),Y
1440 BMI display
145Ø JMP alldone
146Ø \
147Ø display
148Ø LDY≠3
149Ø print
1500 LDA (&FØ),Y
Î5ÎØ JSR osascı
Î52Ø INY
153Ø CPY ≠7
154Ø BNE print
155Ø JMP alldone
156Ø \
157Ø
     hexconvert
158Ø INY
159Ø PHA
16ØØ LSR A
1610 LSR A
1620 LSR A
163Ø LSR A
164Ø JSR first
165Ø STA (&FØ),Y
166Ø INY
167Ø PLA
168Ø JSR first
169Ø STA (&FØ),Y
1700 RTS
171Ø \
Î72Ø
      first
173Ø AND ≠15
174Ø CMP ≠1Ø
175Ø BCC over
```

Listing 6 3 continued

```
176Ø ADC ≠6
1770 over
178Ø ADC ≠48
179Ø RTS
1800 ]
1810 NEXT
182Ø ENDPROC
183Ø
1840 DEF PROCchecksum
185Ø N%=Ø
186Ø FOR X%=&5ØØØ TO &515E
187Ø N%=N%+?X%
188Ø NEXT
189Ø IF N%=38567 THEN ENDPROC
1900 VDU 7
1910 PRINT"Assembler error!
1920 STOP
```

IØ REM OSWORD Tutorial

17Ø UNTILØ

Listing 6 4 Tutorial and test for new OSWORD call Save as OSWTEST

```
30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
  4Ø
  5Ø MODE 7
   6Ø REPEAT
   70 REPEAT
   8Ø INPUT "Enter number in range 1-655
    "R%
35
   9Ø UNTIL R%>Ø AND R%<65536
               Y%=Ø X%=&7Ø
  1ØØ A%=&65
  110 ?&7Ø=129
120 ?&71=R% MOD 256
  13Ø ?&72=R% DIV 256
  140 PRINT"In hex that is ",
  15Ø CALL &FFFI
  16Ø PRINT
```

2Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986

Chapter Seven Extended Vectors

When designing ROM images you might need to add facilaties that are automatically accessed by the MOS as and when required For example, when an error occurs during program operation the Master will print out an error message, it would be nice however to add a patch that would call the routine in your sideways ROM to print out the erroneous line and perhaps even highlight the error itself

Similarly, filing system ROMs, such as disc systems, must be accessible from the calling program or However, calls cannot be made directly by a command simple JSR command as the coding held within 18 sideways ROM What needs to take place is for the current ROM to be switched out and for the new one to be switched in then the JMP or JSR can be carried out This sounds, and indeed would be, a convoluted and difficult job as it would mean keeping a machine code patch in RAM to handle all the switching

A mechanism exists in the MOS called 'extended vector entry' This allows the main operating system vectors to point into the MOS and tell it to hand control over to another ROM It will also handle transfer of control from the current ROM to a routine in another ROM and then switch back to the original ROM

Twenty seven such vectors are implemented on the Master and each is allocated a number such that the physical address of the vector is located at

&2ØØ+2*<vector number>

Table 7 I lists all the information you'll need so you

don't have to worry about having to calculate anything
yourself

To redirect a vector we need to point the vector itself into a part of the MOS called the 'extended vector processing area' The vector must have the following address placed into it

&FFØØ+3*<vector number>

Table 7 I lists the actual entry points each vector must be made to point to so it will be processed correctly

Vector	Location	Entry point	Offset
USERV	& 2ØØ	&FFØØ	Ø-2
BRKV	& 202	&FFØ3	3-5
IRQÎV	& 204	&FFØ6	6-8
IRQ2V	& 2Ø6	&FFØ9	11- 0
CLIV	&2Ø8	&FFØC	12-14
BYTEV	& 2ØA	&FFØF	15-17
WORDV	&2ØC	&FF Î 2	1 8-2Ø
WRCHV	& 2ØE	&FF 1 5	21-23
RDCHV	&2 1 Ø	&FF 1 8	24-26
FILEV	&2 1 2	&FFÎB	27-29
ARGSV	&214	&FFIE	3Ø-32
BGETV	&216	&FF2 Î	33-35
BPUTV	&2 1 8	&FF24	36-38
GBPBV	&2ÎA	&FF27	39 -4 Î
FINDV	&2IC	&FF2A	42-44
FSCV	&2ÎE	&FF2D	45-47
EVENTV	& 22Ø	&FF3Ø	48-5Ø
UPTV	&222	&FF33	5 1- 53
NETV	&224	&FF36	54-56
VDUV	&226	&FF39	57-59
KEYV	&228	&FF3C	6Ø−62
INSV	& 22A	&FF3F	63-65
REMV	&22C	&FF42	66-68
CNPV	&22E	&FF45	69-7 Î
INDÍV	&23Ø	&FF48	72-74
IND2V	& 232	&FF4B	75-77
IND3V	& 234	&FF4E	78-8ø

Table 7 I Extended vectors

As table 7 I shows, each extended vector entry point is offset by three bytes from the next, to allow the instruction JSR &FF5I to be assembled (NB MOS3 Ø may vary on other MOS's) This address marks the start of

the extended vector processing coding
The MOS needs to know which ROM to page in and which address to call in it Space is provided in RAM for this information in an area called the 'extended vector space', the start address of which is ascertained by issuing an OSBYTE call as follows

LDA ≠&A8 LDX ≠&ØØ LDY ≠&FF JSR osbyte

This call will return with the start address extended vector space in the index registers. In MOS3 \emptyset this address is &D9F

Each vector is allocated three bytes in the extended vector space, and the bytes corresponding to each are found by calculating

Vector space+3*<vector number>

These bytes must have the following information poked into them

- Low byte of address in ROM
- High byte of address in ROM ROM number copied from &F4

Working example

All of what went on above may have seemed long-winded, but as the following example of an extended vector proves it really is straightforward — all you need to do is to refer to table 7 $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$

The USERV is located at &200 and &201 This normally associated with the two commands *LINE and *CODE These are implemented solely to allow you to add customised routines to the Master Try executing either of these now type in *LINE or *CODE and you will get the 'Bad command' error message This is because they have not been assigned a task at present and currently point directly to the error message

We can change this In this worked example we'll get both of these commands to produce a bleep when called Again, the action is not spectacular but it is simple so that you can concentrate on the extended vector coding

The first task is to save the current vector contents as we will either need to restore them or jump onto the vector once we have finished with it. Here they are stored at &8E and &8F Looking at table 7 I we see that the USRV is located at &200 and &201, so

```
\ get low byte
LDA &200
STA &8E
               \ save it
               \ get high byte
LDA &2ØÎ
STA &8F
               \ save it
```

Remember to preserve the low byte first so that you can

use &8E as a vector to jump through

The next step is to point the vector to the extended vector processing code Again looking at table 7 f we can see that this address is at &FFØØ This is placed in the vector thus

```
\ low byte of &FFØØ
LDA ≠Ø
STA &200
LDA ≠&FF
               \ high byte of &FFØØ
STA &201
```

The final action required is to place the address of the new vector routine and the identity number of the ROM it is contained in within the correct three bytes in the extended vector space. The extended vector space starts at &D9F in MOS3 Ø Looking at table 7 I we see that the offset into this area is at \emptyset , Γ and 2 Assuming the new USERV routine is at 'new' we get

```
LDA ≠new MOD 256
                   \ calculate low byte address
                   \ save it
STA &D9F
                   \ calculate high byte address
LDA ≠new DIV 256
                   \ save it
STA &D9F+1
                   \ get ROM identity
LDA &F4
                   \ save it
STA &D9F+2
```

Location &F4 always contains the identity number of the currently selected ROM And that's all there is to it'

If you need to reset the vector to its original address simply transfer the contents of &8E and &8F back to &200 and &201 - there's no need to reset the extended vector space

```
LDA &8E
               \ reset low byte
STA &2ØØ
LDA &8F
               \ reset high byte
STA &2ØI
```

Obviously it is important not to alter the contents of &8E and &8F in any way

Listing 7 f puts all this into action Once run and

initialised the commands *ON and *OFF turn the extended vector on and off respectively Typing *ON and entering *LINE or *CODE will cause a beep to be made Typing *OFF will mean you get the error message 'Bad command' when you use either command

If you have listing 5 1 ('INTERP') to hand you can use this as the basis for this new listing ('VECTOR') To do this make the following alterations

Delete lines 1940 to 2050 inclusive

Add new lines 1940 onwards

Note that when you are changing the contents of a vector in this way you should always disable interrupts first with SEI and enable them with CLI after the change. This is to prevent the vector being used while it is being changed which could be disastrous if only one byte had been changed at the time! It is also a good idea to save the status register on the stack at this time as well for later restoration. Hence use

PHP SEI

prior to change, and

CLI PLP

after revectoring

46Ø INX

```
Listing 7 1 How to use extended vector to point into
a sideways ROM Save as VECTOR Based on listing 5 1
(INTERP)
   IØ REM Extended Vector ROM
   20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø
   5Ø PROCassemble
   60 PROCchecksum
   7Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +5ØØ 8ØØØ 6
   8Ø END
   9Ø
  100 DEF PROCassemble
  IIØ osnewl=&FFE7
  12Ø osasci=&FFE3
  13Ø comline=&F2
  140 FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
  15Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
  16Ø [
  170 OPT pass
  18Ø EQUB Ø
  19Ø EQUW Ø
  200 JMP service
  21Ø EQUB &82
  22Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
  23Ø EQUB Î
  24Ø title
  25Ø EQUS "Extended Vector ROM"
  26Ø EQUB Ø
  27Ø
      version
  28Ø EQUS " 1 ØØ"
  29Ø EQUB Ø
  3ØØ offset
  31Ø EQUB Ø
  32Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
  33Ø EOUB Ø
  34Ø
      service
  35Ø PHA
  36Ø PHX
  37Ø PHY
  38Ø CMP ≠9
  39Ø BNE nothelp
  400 LDA (comline),Y
  410 CMP ≠13
420 BNE check
  43Ø JSR help
  44Ø LDX ≠255
  45Ø details
```

Listing 7 I continued

```
47Ø LDA command, X
48Ø BEO donecommand
49Ø JSR &FFE3
500 BRA details
510 donecommand
52Ø JSR osnewl
53Ø BRA restore
54Ø \
55Ø check
56Ø LDX ≠255
57Ø DEY
58Ø again
59Ø INX
6ØØ INY
610 LDA (comline),Y
62Ø AND ≠&DF
63Ø CMP com, X
64Ø BEQ again
65Ø LDA com, X
66Ø CMP ≠&FE
67Ø BEQ mine
68Ø restore
69Ø PLY
7ØØ PLX
71Ø PLA
72Ø RTS
73Ø \
74Ø nothelp
75Ø CMP ≠4
76Ø BEQ unrecognised
77Ø BRA alldone
78Ø \
79Ø help
800 JSR osnewl
81Ø LDX ≠&FF
82Ø JSR helploop
83Ø JSR helploop
840 JSR osnewl
850 RTS
86Ø \
87Ø helploop
88Ø INX
89Ø LDA title.X
900 BEQ done
91Ø JSR &FFE3
92Ø BRA helploop
93Ø done
94Ø RTS
```

```
Listing 7 I continued
  95Ø \
  96Ø mine
  97Ø JSR help
  98Ø LDX ≠255
  99Ø
      more
 IØØØ INX
 IØIØ LDA lists,X
 1020 BMI alldone
 1Ø3Ø JSR &FFE3
 1Ø4Ø BRA more
 IØ5Ø \
 IØ6Ø alldone
 1Ø7Ø PLY
 IØ8Ø PLX
IØ9Ø PLA
 IIØØ RTS
 IIIØ \
 II2Ø
      COM
 113Ø EQUS"VECTORS"
 114Ø EQUB &FE
 115Ø command
 116Ø EQUS" Vectors"
 ÎÎ7Ø EQUB Ø
 118Ø
      lısts
 119Ø EQUS "
               Redirects USERV at &200"
 12ØØ EQUB 13
               ON"
 121Ø EQUS
 122Ø EQUB 13
 123Ø EQUS "
               OFF"
 124Ø EQUB 13
 125Ø EQUB &FF
 126Ø \
 127Ø
      unrecognised
 128Ø LDX ≠255
 129Ø DEY
 13ØØ PHY
 131Ø
       identify
 132Ø INX
 133Ø INY
 1340 LDA (comline),Y
  135Ø AND ≠&DF
 136Ø CMP comtable,X
  1370 BEQ identify
1380 LDA comtable,X
  139Ø BMI address
  14ØØ \
  141Ø
       moveon
```

142Ø INX

Listing 7 I continued

```
1430 LDA comtable,X
144Ø BPL moveon
1450 BNE notend
146Ø PLY
147Ø BRA alldone
148Ø \
149Ø
     notend
15ØØ INX
ISIØ PLY
152Ø PHY
153Ø JMP identify
154Ø \
155Ø address
156Ø CMP ≠&FF
157Ø BNE notFF
158Ø PLY
159Ø BRA alldone
1600 notFF
161Ø \
162Ø STA &39
163Ø INX
1640 LDA comtable,X
165Ø STA &38
166Ø JMP (&38)
167Ø \
168Ø comtable
169Ø EQUS "ON"
1700 EQUB on DIV 256
171Ø EQUB on MOD 256
172Ø EQUS "OFF"
173Ø EQUB off DIV 256
174Ø EQUB off MOD 256
175Ø
176Ø
177Ø
178Ø EQUB &FF
179Ø \
18øø
181Ø
182Ø
183Ø
184Ø
185Ø \
1860 found
187Ø PLY
188Ø PLY
189Ø PLX
19ØØ PLA
```

Listing 7 I continued

```
191Ø LDA ≠Ø
192Ø RTS
193Ø \
194Ø
     on
195Ø LDA &2ØØ
196Ø STA &8E
197Ø LDA &2ØI
198Ø STA &8F
199Ø LDA ≠Ø
2ØØØ STA &2ØØ
2ØÎØ LDA ≠&FF
2Ø2Ø STA &2ØI
2Ø3Ø LDA ≠new MOD 256
2Ø4Ø STA &D9F
2Ø5Ø LDA ≠new DIV 256
2060 STA &D9F+1
2070 LDA &F4
2Ø8Ø STA &D9F+2
2Ø9Ø CLI
2100 JMP found
2IIØ \
212Ø
     new
213Ø LDA ≠7
214Ø JSR &FFEE
215Ø RTS
216Ø \
217Ø
      off
218Ø LDA &8E
219Ø STA &2ØØ
22ØØ LDA &8F
221Ø STA &2Ø1
222Ø JMP found
223Ø ]
224Ø NEXT
225Ø ENDPROC
226Ø
227Ø DEF PROCchecksum
228Ø N%=Ø
229Ø FOR X%=&5ØØØ TO &515D
23ØØ N%=N%+?X%
23ÎØ NEXT
232Ø IF N%=4Ø2ØI THEN ENDPROC
 233Ø VDU 7
234Ø PRINT"Assembler error'"
 235Ø STOP
```

Chapter Eight Pot Pourri

So far it's been quite easy to demonstrate the service calls, but some are not that simple For example, service call 12 allows a ROM to claim the non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) which effectively control the operation of the Master Filing systems such as net and disc are typical cases where you would want to claim NMIs - but space doesn't allow me to include a filing system program! In this chapter we will have a general look at routines of this type, and briefly examine writing a filing system Calls not covered here will be dealt with in greater depth in chapters to come

Service Call 5

This call is issued by the MOS when an interrupt request (IRQ) that it does not recognise occurs your paged ROM makes use of the IRQ line then ıt should be directed to a suitable interrupt request polling routine and check any device(s) to find the source of the IRQ Any ROM recognising the interrupt should process it, set the accumulator to zero to indicate that the interrupt has been serviced, and then return with an RTS instruction and NOT an RTI as generally the norm when an IRO has occurred code shows how a suitable polling routine following might be instigated

```
CMP #5 \ is it unrecognised IRQ?

BNE next \ branch to next test if not

JSR polling \ execute IRQ polling

BCC notfound \ carry clear if IRQ not identified
```

```
PLA \ pull stack to balance previous push
LDA ≠Ø \ call serviced
RTS \ return
notfound
PLA \ put service code in accumulator
RTS \ and return
```

As usual, this code assumes that on entry the service call type was preserved on the stack. If an IRQ is not identified by any of the ROMs then the MOS directs a final call through the user vector IRQ2

Service Call 6

This service call is used to inform paged ROMs that a BRK has occurred, before the MOS hands control over to the current language ROM via the BRK vector (BRKV), to process the BRK In many instances the BRK is used to an error, and print an error message If the service call does not intend to process the BRK, for example to produce some extra fancy error messages and pointers, the contents of all registers should be preserved The vectored address at &FD and &FE points to the error number in memory while the byte at &FØ contains the value of the hardware stack pointer after the BRK was executed As the BRK may have occurred in a ROM other than the one currently processing the BRK, it is important to be able to ascertain in which ROM it did occur To do this OSBYTE &BA should be called, and the ROM number is returned in the X register As always load the your ROM traps this call it should with Ø before returning to the accumulator otherwise the service call number should be preserved so that the MOS can poll other ROMs

Service Call II

The major filing and networking systems on the BBC micros make extensive use of non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) This call should be used when the ROM system currently using it (ie a DFS ROM) no longer needs to do so and is prepared to release it. When this service call is issued the Y register holds the number of the ROM that was using the NMIs before the claim for them was made Each ROM that recognises this call should check the contents of the Y register with its own ROM number, available in the X register and location &F4 at the time of the service. If it is the same then the accumulator should hold zero on return from the service call, otherwise all registers should be preserved. The

following coding shows the general procedure for handling this call if the ROM is making use of the ${\tt NMIs}$

```
CMP ≠12
               \ is it NMI release?
BNE next
               \ branch to next if not
               \ move last ROM number into
TYA
               \ accumulator
CMP &F4
               \ is it this ROM?
BNE notme
               \ branch if not
PLA
               \ balance previous push
LDA ≠Ø
               \ recognised code
RTS
               \ and return
notme
PLA
               \ restore service call number
RTS
```

To return the use of the NMI to its previous user OSBYTE 143 should be executed as follows

```
LDA #143 \ OSBYTE code

LDX #11 \ service call code

LDY #255

JSR OSBYTE \ issue request
```

As mentioned before, service call II will normally only be trapped if the user is implementing a filing system Care must be taken when using NMIs as all BBC micros are interrupt-driven and funny things can happen to general housekeeping chores if they are not treated with respect. Note also that the zero page locations associated with the filing system should not be used during this service call's execution.

Service Call 12

This call is issued to claim use of the NMIs It is called with OSBYTE 143 as follows

```
LDA \neq143 \ OSBYTE code

LDX \neq12 \ service call 12

LDY \neq255

JSR OSBYTE \ perform call
```

The ROM that currently has claim of the NMIs should place its ROM number into the Y register and store any important data in its own private storage area (covered shortly) It should also inhibit any further use of NMIs until it has reclaimed the NMI at a later stage The claiming ROM should also store the ROM number of

the current NMI for use when releasing the NMI claim If the ROM was not using the NMIs, then the Y register must remain unaltered Once claimed the zero page area associated with NMI handling from &AØ to &A7 is free for use and the ROM's resident NMI service routine should be copied to &DØØ

Service Call 15

Whenever a new filing system is initialised it must perform a number of operations. One of these is to repoint all vectors into the coding of the new filing system. After writing relevant addresses into the various filing system vectors, service call 15 should be issued by the new filing system, to inform all other paged software that a change in filing system has taken place.

Service Call 16

This call is performed to inform paged ROMs that may be using SPOOL or EXEC files that a filing system change is being performed On receipt of this call any ROM using such files should perform any required housekeeping to tidy things up If a ROM wants a SPOOL or EXEC file to remain open, a zero should be placed in the accumulator before releasing the service call

Service Call 17

This call is issued when the character font, le the user definable character set, is about to explode or implode On the Master of course the character font is permanently exploded, so checking for a pending explosion is not important - unless you also wish your code to work on a BBC micro Checking for an implosion may be of use however - perhaps in conjunction with the Font ROM listing given earlier This service call is therefore issued when the MOS encounters OSBYTE &I5 (*FX20)

Service Call 18

This call is provided to allow filing systems to be initialised without having to issue any operating system commands. This is important as a program may need to have files open in two or more filing systems. The filing system should check the contents of the Y register to see if they agree with its operating system filing system code as defined by OSARGS If the ROM

identifies as the called filing system it should initialise itself and restore all the files that were open at the time it was previously shut down

Service Call 21

This call allows you to process software-generated interrupts. It is issued 100 times every second after an OSBYTE &16 (*FX22) command has been used. On receipt of an OSBYTE &17 (*FX23) the MOS stops issuing the service call. The call is effectively an interrupt polling routine. Its main use would be for control of peripherals, and on receipt your ROM should check its hardware accordingly. Of course it can be used for other things as the next example shows!

Listing 8 1 will begin to increment a two-byte counter after *FX22 has been issued. It will stop incrementing the counter, held at &70 and &71, after *FX23. The code requires nothing other than to catch the service call and direct it to the polling routine You can use listing 4.3 from Chapter 4 (saved as 'HELP3') as the base for the program and make the following changes

Change lines 10, 220, 1040, 1070, 1100, 1120
Add lines 55, 311, 312, 313, 314, 1150 to 1370
inclusive

To see the program in action, type $\star FX22$ and enter this one-liner

REPEAT P '&7Ø AND &FFFF UNTIL Ø

Pressing ESCAPE and typing *FX23 will stop the interrupt polling

Obviously the ROM processing this call will need to know if it should return with A=Ø to terminate this call, however other ROMs may also be using this call to operate their own routines and as such the accumulator should return with &15 to ensure the MOS passes the service call onto other ROMs. To this end the Y register will always hold a number which should be decremented by the number of claims made by your ROM. For example if you previously claimed this call twice to poll devices, then the Y register should be decremented twice on completion of the two polling routines. If Y is Ø then the accumulator should return holding Ø else it should be re-set with the service call number.

Service Call 37

This call should be trapped by filing system ROMs only It is issued as a request for information about the filing systems installed in the micro If your filing system ROM receives this call it should supply II bytes of information as follows

```
8 bytes Filing system name padded out with spaces I byte Lowest handle number used I byte Highest handle number used I byte The filing system number
```

This information should be stored at the address pointed to by the vector at &F2 and &F3 Y should be set to zero and will end up incremented by II

As an example, the ADFS would return the following on receipt of this service call

Decimal	ASCII
96	a
1øø	đ
IØ2	f
115	s
32	<space></space>
45	Lowest handle used
57	Highest handle used
8	Filing system number

Service Call 38

This is issued to all ROMs when *SHUT is used

Service Call 39

Call 39 is issued on a hard reset, ie when the micro is switched on or after CTRL-BREAK If you run the trace

program (listing 3 1 in Chapter 3), you will notice that it is issued immediately prior to the initialisation of the Acorn DFS, and obviously directly after the MOS has initialised Intercepting this call will allow you to initialise your own ROM as needs be Program 8 2 does just that and prints the date onto the screen. It does this by intercepting call 39 (&27), reads the CMOS clock with OSWORD &E, and then prints just the date onto the screen. It uses memory from &7% for the OSWORD parameter block and you could print the time as well simply by extending the loop from line 129%. You can use listing 4 3 as the base for the program and adapt as follows

Change lines 10, 220, 1040, 1070, 1100, 1120
Add lines 55, 311, 312, 313, 314, 1150 to 1460
inclusive

Service Call 254

If the Tube interface is present this service call is issued after OSHWM has been defined, to see if it is active. If it is then service call 255 will be issued

Service Call 255

This call is issued if a co-processor or second processor is active. It is issued prior to final setting of the OSHWM in the co- or second processor, thus allowing languages and start-up messages to be copied.

About Filing Systems

A filing system ROM such as the Disc Filing System (DFS), Advanced DFS (ADFS) or Network Filing System (NFS) can be selected in a number of ways The most obvious of these is via a MOS command such as *DISC The MOS will issue service call 4 here and the DFS ROM will recognise the command and muscle its way in as the active filing system as described below

A filing system may be selected in two other ways however, namely through service call 18 with the Y register containing the filing system number, or via service call 3 where a special recognised key is pressed in conjunction with the BREAK key, eg D-BREAK for Disc, N-BREAK for Net and so on

Because a filing system will never be required to run directly in either a second or co-processor it should always be written in the native code of the 6502-series

microprocessor in the BBC micro or Master

All filing systems must be capable of responding to the following service calls

When a filing system recognises that it has been selected it should initialise itself in the following stages

First, call OSFSC with A=6 thus enabling the outgoing filing system to tidy up shop and shut itself down This MOS call does not have a recognised vector entry point so it should be called in a slightly convoluted way to allow control to be restored to the point after the JMP, this is done by performing a JSR to a place which contains the instruction, JMP(&2IE), ie

JSR dofsc xx xx dofsc JMP (&21E)

Second, set up the extended vectors required by the filing system

Next, issue service call 15 to inform other ROMs that the filing system vectors have been altered

Finally, restore any files that remain open since the

filing system was last in use

In addition to its own static workspace claimed, the filing system has some other exclusive memory locations free for use. These are

&AØ to &A7	The NMI workspace - available when
	filing system has claimed NMIs
&A8 to &AF	* workspace - for when * commands
	are issued
&BØ to &BF	Temporary workspace Contents may
	change between commands
&CØ to &CF	Private workspace Contents here do
	not change between commands if
	filing system does not change
&DØØ to &D5F	NMI service code space If ROM uses
	NMIs the service code for them
	should be loaded here (claim with
	service call I2 first)

```
Listing 8 T Traps service call 2T which polls ROMs
100 times a second Save as POLLING Adapt from listing
4 3 (HELP3)
   IØ REM Polling ROM
   20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
   40
   5Ø PROCassemble
   55 PROCchecksum
  6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 7
  7Ø END
  8Ø DEF PROCassemble
  9Ø osnewl=&FFE7
 IØØ comline=&F2
 IIØ FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
 12Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
 13Ø [
 140 OPT pass
 ISØ EQUB Ø
 16Ø EQUW Ø
 17Ø JMP service
 18Ø EQUB &82
 19Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
 2ØØ EOUB Î
 210 title
 22Ø EQUS "Polling Interrupt ROM"
 23Ø EQUB Ø
 24Ø version
 25Ø EQUS " I ØØ"
 26Ø EQUB Ø
 27Ø
     offset
 28Ø EQUB Ø
 29Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
 3ØØ EOUB Ø
 3IØ
     service
 311 CMP ≠&15
 312 BNE tryhelp
 313 JMP time
 314
     tryhelp
 32Ø CMP ≠9
 33Ø BNE nothelp
 34Ø PHA
 35Ø PHX
 36Ø PHY
 37Ø LDA (comline),Y
 38Ø CMP ≠13
 39Ø BNE check
 400 JSR help
 41Ø LDX ≠255
```

```
42Ø details
43Ø INX
440 LDA command, X
45Ø BEQ donecommand
46Ø JSR &FFE3
47Ø BRA details
48Ø
   donecommand
49Ø JSR osnewl
500 BRA restore
51Ø \
52Ø
    check
53Ø LDX ≠255
54Ø DEY
55Ø
   again
56Ø INX
57Ø INY
58Ø LDA (comline),Y
59Ø AND ≠&DF
600 CMP com, X
6ÎØ BEQ again
62Ø LDA com, X
63Ø CMP ≠&FE
64Ø BEQ mine
65Ø
   restore
66Ø PLY
67Ø PLX
68Ø PLA
69Ø nothelp
7ØØ RTS
71Ø \
72Ø
    help
73Ø JSR osnewl
74Ø LDX ≠&FF
75Ø JSR helploop
76Ø JSR helploop
77Ø JSR osnewl
78Ø RTS
79Ø \
    helploop
8ØØ
81Ø INX
82Ø LDA title,X
83Ø BEQ done
84Ø JSR &FFE3
85Ø BRA helploop
86Ø done
87Ø RTS
88Ø mine
```

89Ø JSR help

133Ø NEXT

135Ø VDU 7

134Ø IF N%=3Ø5ØI THEN ENDPROC

Listing 8 I continued 9ØØ LDX ≠255 910 more 92Ø INX 93Ø LDA lists,X 94Ø BMI alldone 95Ø JSR &FFE3 96Ø BRA more 97Ø alldone 98Ø PLY 99Ø PLX IØØØ PLA ÍØÍØ LDA ≠Ø IØ2Ø RTS 1030 com IØ4Ø EQUS 'POLLING" 1Ø5Ø EQUB &FE IØ6Ø command IØ7Ø EQUS" Polling" 1080 EQUB Ø 1090 lists IIDD EQUS " Start with *FX22 Cancel with *FX23" IIIØ EQUB I3 112Ø EQUS Increments a two byte numb er at &7Ø" 113Ø EQUB 13 114Ø EQUB &FF 115Ø \ II6Ø time 117Ø PHA XHQ 0811 II9Ø PHY 1200 INC &70 1210 BNE nohigh 122Ø INC &71 123Ø nohigh 124Ø JMP restore 125Ø] 126Ø NEXT 127Ø ENDPROC 128Ø 129Ø DEF PROCchecksum 13ØØ N%=Ø 1310 FOR X%=&5000 TO &5114 1320 N%=N%+?X%

Pot Pourri IØI

Listing 8 I continued

1360 PRINT"Assembler error'"
1370 STOP

Listing 8 2 Traps service call 39 to print date on the screen after a hard reset Save as TIME Developed from listing 4 3 (HELP3)

IØ REM Date on Reset 2Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986 30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide 40 50 PROCassemble 55 PROCchecksum 6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6 7Ø END 80 DEF PROCassemble 9Ø osnewl=&FFE7 IØØ comline=&F2 IIØ FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3 12Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ 13Ø [140 OPT pass 15Ø EQUB Ø 16Ø EQUW Ø 17Ø JMP service 18Ø EQUB &82 19Ø EQUB offset MOD 256 2ØØ EQUB Î 2ÎØ title 22Ø EOUS "Date ROM" 23Ø EQUB Ø 24Ø version 25Ø EOUS " I ØØ 26Ø EQUB Ø 27Ø offset 28Ø EQUB Ø 29Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith" 3ØØ EQUB Ø 310 service 311 CMP ≠&27 312 BNE tryhelp 3Î3 JMP time 314 tryhelp 32Ø CMP ≠9

33Ø BNE nothelp

34Ø PHA 35Ø PHX

```
36Ø PHY
370 LDA (comline),Y
38Ø CMP ≠13
39Ø BNE check
400 JSR help
41Ø LDX ≠255
42Ø details
43Ø INX
440 LDA command, X
45Ø BEQ donecommand
46Ø JSR &FFE3
47Ø BRA details
48Ø donecommand
49Ø JSR osnewl
5ØØ BRA restore
51Ø \
52Ø
    check
53Ø LDX ≠255
54Ø DEY
55Ø again
56Ø INX
57Ø INY
58Ø LDA (comline),Y
59Ø AND ≠&DF
600 CMP com, X
61∅ BEQ again
62Ø LDA com, X
63Ø CMP ≠&FE
64Ø BEQ mine
65Ø
    restore
66Ø PLY
67Ø PLX
68Ø PLA
69Ø nothelp
7ØØ RTS
71Ø \
72Ø help
73Ø JSR osnewl
74Ø LDX ≠&FF
75Ø JSR helploop
76Ø JSR helploop
77Ø JSR osnewl
78Ø RTS
79Ø\
8øø
   helploop
81Ø INX
82Ø LDA title,X
83Ø BEQ done
```

84Ø JSR &FFE3 85Ø BRA helploop 86Ø done 87Ø RTS 88Ø mine 89Ø JSR help 9ØØ LDX ≠255 9IØ more 92Ø INX 93Ø LDA lists,X 94Ø BMI alldone 95Ø JSR &FFE3 96Ø BRA more 97Ø alldone 98Ø PLY 99Ø PLX IØØØ PLA ÍØÍØ LDA ≠Ø IØ2Ø RTS IØ3Ø com IØ4Ø EQUS"DATE" **1050 EQUB &FE** IØ6Ø command 1070 EOUS" Date" **IØ8Ø EQUB Ø** 1Ø9Ø lists IIØØ EQUS " Date is displayed on Reset IIIØ EQUB 13 II2Ø EQUS " Time string stored at &70" II3Ø EQUB I3 114Ø EQUB &FF 115Ø \ II6Ø tıme II7Ø PHA XHQ Ø811 II9Ø PHY 12ØØ LDA ≠14 121Ø LDX ≠&7Ø 122Ø LDY ≠Ø 123Ø JSR &FFFI

124Ø LDY ≠Ø 125Ø date 126Ø LDA &7Ø,Y 127Ø JSR &FFE3

128Ø INY 129Ø CPY ≠15 130Ø BNE date

131Ø JSR &FFE7
132Ø JSR &FFE7
133Ø JMP restore
134Ø]
135Ø NEXT
136Ø ENDPROC
137Ø
138Ø DEF PROCChecksum
139Ø N%=Ø
14ØØ FOR X%=&5ØØØ TO &51Ø3
141Ø N%=N%+?X%
142Ø NEXT
143Ø IF N%=3Ø419 THEN ENDPROC
144Ø VDU 7
145Ø PRINT"Assembler error!"
146Ø STOP

Chapter Nine Configure and Status

The commands *CONFIGURE and *STATUS allow the Master power-up and reset configuration to be defined by writing to certain of the 50 bytes of battery-backed CMOS RAM The allocation of these bytes is as follows

Byte numbers	Allocation
ø to 1 9	Configuration system
2Ø to 29	Acorn future use
3Ø to 38	Third party ROM use
39 to 49	User memory

Bytes 30 to 38 are allocated for specific use of sideways RAM and ROM software

Service calls 40 and 41 are provided by the MOS to allow extension of the range of *CONFIGURE and *STATUS options by trapping each call as appropriate In the examples that follow, the date printing on reset routine from the last chapter is extended so it may be switched on and off via the *CONFIGURE command Use of *STATUS will enable the user to read the currently-selected option at any time

Choosing the byte

First let us examine how we go about deciding which of the reserved ROM bytes we can use Well, that's easy—the choice is already made for us. There are only eight bytes available and these correspond directly with the spare number of sideways ROM/RAM slots available. For example, ROM slot Ø corresponds with byte number 3Ø, slot I with byte number 3I slot 2 with byte number 32.

and so on To locate the byte associated with our ROM slot we simply need to find which ROM slot the program is running in and add it to 30, thus

```
CLC \ clear carry read to add LDA &F4 \ get ROM slot number ADC \neq3\emptyset \ add it to 3\emptyset
```

The byte number is now held in the accumulator Location &F4 always contains a copy of the selected ROM bank

Once we know which byte is ours we need to be able to read and write to it OSBYTE I6I and I62 allow us to do this respectively The accumulator should hold the OSBYTE number and the X register the byte in CMOS RAM to be read from or written to In the case of a read operation the Y register returns the data, in the instance of a write it should contain the data to be written

For example, to read the contents of our byte we proceed as follows

```
TAX \ move byte number into X
LDA ≠161 \ OSBYTE number
JSR &FFF4 \ and read byte
```

The Y register now holds the contents of the allocated battery-backed byte

The allocation of a single byte may seem mean, but remember that a single bit can be used to signal an ON/OFF condition. Therefore by conservative use your own firmware could provide up to eight new options

It's a Date

The new status/configuration extension chosen here is

DATE ON/OFF

Typing

*CONFIGURE DATE ON

will cause the date to be printed on the screen
whenever a reset is made (ie on CTRL-BREAK) Likewise,
typing

*CONFIGURE DATE OFF

will disable this action and no date will be printed at

a reset *STATUS DATE will print either ON or OFF depending on the current configuration

The two straight commands *CONFIGURE and *STATUS must also be catered for The former will print

DATE ON/OFF

and the latter will print, DATE followed by the current

configuration status

Just by defining these objectives we have really already clarified what our new firmware must be capable of and each item can be coded (and tested if your are writing your own specific items) in turn

The first action would be to extend the 'time' routine given in the last chapter so that it first reads the appropriate CMOS battery-backed byte as already described By examining the contents of the Y register the routine can determine whether to print the date If a Ø is returned the date is not printed otherwise it is printed

```
CPY ≠∅ \ 1s DATE OFF?

BNE carryon \ no, so read and print

JMP restore \ yes, so return
```

Extending status

The MOS will issue service call &29 (41) on two occasions First, if a straight *STATUS is encountered This requires that a complete list of all options are printed After printing the configuration status as defined in bytes Ø to 19, the MOS issues the call to allow other ROMs to respond Second, the call is issued if the status command is followed by an unknown option This enables the current ROM to check to see if it is familiar with the option As with other * commands the vector at &F2 is used to point to the first unknown, non-space, character after the *STATUS command The first instance is easily checked, simply test directly for a return character, ie 13 (&ØD) and branch to the printing routine thus

```
LDA (&F2),Y \ get first non-space character CMP \( \frac{1}{2} \) is it a return?

BEQ dotime \ if yes then branch to print
```

If the character is not a return then we need to check this against our own possible status options - Just one in this case - in a similar manner to checking for exended help options as described in chapter 3

However, here's the routine to do just that

```
trytime
DEY
LDX ≠255
             \ initialise counters
 loopt
INY
INX
               \ increment counters
CPX ≠4
               \ only 4 letters in DATE
               \ if here then it must be ours
BEQ ours
LDA (&F2),Y
               \ get next byte
AND ≠&DF
               \ force to upper case
               \ is it the same?
CMP string,X
BEQ loopt
               \ if yes, try next byte
SEC
               \ set carry to signal failure
               \ and return to calling routine
RTS
 ours
CLC
               \ set carry to signal success
RTS
               \ and return
string
EQUS"DATE"
```

This routine is written in the form of a subroutine, called with JSR trytime, as it will be needed by the configure routine to be discussed later. The carry flag is used to indicate whether, the command is identified. A successful match is indicated by clearing the carry flag, while a failure sets it. On return, the carry flag can be tested and the necessary action taken.

```
BCC end \ it's us, so branch to end routine
JMP restore \ not known, so return to MOS
```

Obviously we now need to find out which option to print, ie 'ON' or 'OFF' This is done by reading the ROM status byte within the CMOS RAM as already described and printing the correct ASCII string

```
end
CLC
LDA &F4
               \ get ROM number
               \ calculate byte number
ADC ≠3Ø
               \ move into X register
LDA ≠161
               \ OSBYTE number
JSR &FFF4
               \ get byte
CPY ≠Ø
               \ is it 'off'?
BEO off
              \ yes branch
LDY ≠5
               \ no, it's 'on' so get new index
 off
LDA onoff,Y \ get byte
```

```
BEQ finished \ if zero then finished JSR &FFE3 \ else print it \ branch until finished onoff \ EQUS"OFF" \ index Y=Ø \ EQUB Ø \ EQUS"ON" \ index Y=5 \ EQUB Ø \ EQUB
```

Extending Configure

Service call 40 is issued by the MOS whenever it encounters an unknown configure option, such as, *CONFIGURE DATE It is also put out to each ROM when a simple *CONFIGURE is encountered, and in such instances the ROM should print the possible options. In both cases the code is not too different from that used above for *STATUS A simple *CONFIGURE is indicated by looking at the next byte and testing for a return character. The string to be printed is simply 'DATE' followed by the two possible options separated by a slash character. The character strings at 'string' and 'onoff' can be used with the ASCII character for '/' being printed at the appropriate point to give

DATE OFF/ON

The spaces between DATE and ON/OFF are deliberate to keep to the format taken by the MOS options
To configure DATE we will specify two slightly

different command strings

*CONFIGURE DATE ON *CONFIGURE DATE OFF

Our ROM will receive the call with (&F2),Y pointing to D Our code must therefore test for DATE (using the routine described above - 'trytime') and then, after moving past any spaces, test for ON or OFF

```
spaces \ start after DATE
LDA (&F2),Y \ get next byte
CMP \( \neq 32 \) is it a space?
BNE none \ \ carry on if not
INY \ \ else increment index
BRA spaces \ \ and try again
none
AND \( \neq &DF \) \ force to upper case
```

```
CMP ≠ASC("O")
                \ 1s 1t 0?
BEQ tryN
                \ branch if so
JMP restore
                \ else not us so restore
INY
                \ increment index
LDA (&F2),Y
                \ get next byte
AND ≠&DF
                \ force to upper case
CMP ≠ASC("N")
BNE tryF
                \ is it N (for ON)
                \ no try F
LDY ≠Î
                \ get byte for ON
BRA write
                \ and branch to write it there
tryF
CMP #ASC("F") \ 1s it F (for OFF)
BEQ yesF
JMP restore
                \ branch if so
                \ else not us so restore
 yesF
LDY ≠Ø
                \ get OFF flag
```

All that is needed now is to write the relevant byte into the correct byte for future reference The Y register already contains the byte to be written so

```
write
CLC \ clear carry
LDA &F4 \ get ROM number
ADC ≠3Ø \ calculate byte number
TAX \ move into X register
LDA ≠162 \ write code number
JSR &FFF4 \ and call OSBYTE
```

In both specific *STATUS and *CONFIGURE instances, once the call has been identified and serviced the accumulator should return to the MOS containing zero

The Program

Listing 9 1 puts the above code into practice It uses listing 8 2 ('TIME') as its base, and the changes and additions needed to adapt this are listed below Save the program under the filename 'DATE'

The Right Byte

In the examples above the numbers \emptyset and I have been loaded directly into the Y register before writing to

the battery-backed RAM As already mentioned however we are only using a single bit in the assigned ROM byte and we may wish to use more. In such cases it is most important that the status of the other bits in the byte are preserved otherwise we will change options when not wishing to To counteract this make good use of the AND and OR operators to either mask or force bits in the byte. Look at the following byte, represented at bit level

INDI IIII

Suppose we wish to set bit 2 (third from the right) to a 1 We need to logically OR the byte with

good gigg

to give

IIII IIII

In assembler this would be

```
LDA byte \ get byte, ie IIII IØF
ORA \neq 4 \ OR with ØØØØ ØIØØ
STA byte \ save result ie IIII IIØI
```

To clear or mask a byte the AND operator can be used Assuming we now wish to clear the same bit we need to AND the byte with

IIII INII

Bit 3 is clear and will therefore be masked clear no matter what its original contents Set bits will be preserved as I's are placed in every other position. The assembler is simply

```
LDA byte \ get byte, ie îlîî îløî
AND #&F7 \ OR with îlîî îøîî
STA byte \ save result ie îlîî îøøî
```

Compact Note

The techniques in this chapter are applicable to the Compact and the listings which follow do work However, they rely on the real-time clock which is present in the Master but not the Compact Hence only the default TIME\$ will be displayed

Listing 9 T Adds date display to configure options Save as DATE Based on listing 8 2 (TIME)

```
IN REM CONFIG and *STATUS
  20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
  30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
  40
  5Ø PROCassemble
  55 PROCchecksum
  6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +3ØØ 8ØØØ 6
  7Ø END
  80 DEF PROCassemble
  9Ø osnewl=&FFL7
IØØ comline=&F2
IIØ FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
120 P%=&8000 O%=&5000
13Ø [
140 OPT pass
15Ø EQUB Ø
16Ø EQUW Ø
17Ø JMP service
180 EQUB &82
190 EQUB offset MOD 256
200 EQUB 1
21Ø title
220 EQUS "Configure and Status ROM"
23Ø EOUB Ø
    version
24Ø
25Ø EQUS " 1 ØØ"
26Ø EOUB Ø
27Ø
    offset
28Ø EQUB Ø
290 EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
3ØØ EQUB Ø
3IØ
    service
311 CMP ≠&27
312 BNE tryhelp
313 JMP time
314 tryhelp
315 CMP≠41 BNE nextry
316 JMP status
317
    nextry
318 CMP≠4Ø BNE andnext
319 JMP configure
32Ø
   andnext CMP ≠9
33Ø BNE nothelp
34Ø PHA
35Ø PHX
36Ø PHY
37Ø LDA (comline),Y
```

```
38Ø CMP ≠13
390 BNE check
400 JSR help
41Ø LDX ≠255
42Ø details
43Ø INX
440 LDA command,X
450 BEQ donecommand
46Ø JSR &FFE3
47Ø BRA details
48Ø donecommand
49Ø JSR osnewl
500 BRA restore
51Ø \
52Ø check
53Ø LDX ≠255
54Ø DEY
55Ø
    agaın
56Ø INX
57Ø INY
58Ø LDA (comline),Y
59Ø AND ≠&DF
600 CMP com,X
61Ø BEQ again
62Ø LDA com, X
63Ø CMP ≠&FE
64Ø BEQ mine
65Ø
     restore
66Ø PLY
67Ø PLX
68Ø PLA
69Ø nothelp
7ØØ RTS
71Ø \
72Ø
     help
73Ø JSR osnewl
74Ø LDX ≠&FF
75Ø JSR helploop
76Ø JSR helploop
77Ø JSR osnewl
78Ø RTS
79Ø \
800 helploop
81Ø INX
82Ø LDA title,X
83Ø BEQ done
84Ø JSR &FFE3
```

85Ø BRA helploop

```
86Ø
      done
  87Ø RTS
  88Ø mine
  89Ø JSR help
  9ØØ LDX ≠255
  910 more
  92Ø INX
  93Ø LDA lists,X
  94Ø BMI alldone
  95Ø JSR &FFE3
  96Ø BRA more
  97Ø alldone
  98Ø PLY
  99Ø PLX
 IØØØ PLA
 IØIØ LDA ≠Ø
 IØ2Ø RTS
 1030 com
 1040 EQUS"DATE
 1Ø5Ø EQUB &FE
 1060 command
 1070 EQUS" Date"
IØ8Ø EQUB Ø
IØ9Ø
     lists
ÎÎØØ EOUS '
              *CONFIG DATE ON"
IIIØ EQUB I3
II2Ø EOUS
              *CONFIG DATE OFF"
II3Ø EQUB I3
1131 EQUS " *STATUS DATE"
1132 EQUB 13
1140 EQUB &FF
115Ø \
ÎÎ6Ø
     tıme
ÎÎ7Ø PHA
II8Ø PHX
II9Ø PHY
12ØØ CLC
1210 LDA &F4
122Ø ADC ≠3Ø
123Ø TAX
124Ø LDA ≠161
125Ø JSR &FFF4
126Ø CPY ≠Ø
1270 BNE carryon
128Ø JMP restore
129Ø \
1300 carryon
131Ø LDA ≠14
```

132Ø LDX ≠&7Ø 133Ø LDY ≠Ø 134Ø JSR &FFFI 135Ø LDY ≠Ø 136Ø \ 137Ø date 138Ø LDA &7Ø,Y 139Ø JSR &FFE3 14ØØ INY 141Ø CPY ≠15 1420 BNE date 143Ø JSR &FFE7 1440 JSR &FFE7 145Ø JMP restore 146Ø \ 147Ø status 148Ø PHA 149Ø PHX 1500 PHY 151Ø LDA (&F2),Y 152Ø CMP ≠13 153Ø BEQ dotime 154Ø JSR trytime 155Ø BCC end 156Ø JMP restore 157Ø \ **1**58Ø ıtstıme 159Ø dotime 16ØØ LDX ≠255 161Ø timeloop 162Ø INX 163Ø LDA string,X 164Ø BEQ end 165Ø JSR &FFE3 1660 BRA timeloop 167Ø end 168Ø CLC 169Ø LDA &F4 17ØØ ADC ≠3Ø 171Ø TAX 172Ø LDA ≠161 173Ø JSR &FFF4 174Ø CPY ≠Ø 175Ø BEQ off 176Ø LDY ≠5 177Ø off 178Ø LDA onoff,Y

1790 BEO finished

```
1800 JSR &FFE3
1810 INY
182Ø BRA off
183Ø \
1840 finished
185Ø PLY
186Ø PLX
187Ø PLA
188Ø LDA ≠Ø
189Ø RTS
1900 \
1910 string
1920 EOUS DATE"
193Ø EQUD &2Ø2Ø2Ø2Ø
194Ø EQUW &ØØ2Ø
195Ø \
1960 onoff
197Ø EQUS "OFF'
198Ø EQUB 13
199Ø EQUB Ø
2000 EQUS "ON"
2Ø1Ø EQUB 13
2Ø2Ø EQUB Ø
2Ø3Ø \
2040 configure
2Ø5Ø PHA
2060 PHX
2Ø7Ø PHY
2Ø8Ø LDA (&F2),Y
2Ø9Ø CMP ≠13
2100 BNE notCR
2ÎÎØ LDX ≠255
212Ø
     conloop
213Ø INX
2140 LDA string,X
215Ø BEQ condone
216Ø JSR &FFEE
217Ø BRA conloop
218Ø \
219Ø
     condone
22ØØ INX
2210 LDA string,X
222Ø CMP≠13
223Ø BEQ nextcon
224Ø JSR &FFE3
225Ø BRA condone
226Ø \
```

227Ø nextcon

```
228Ø INX
229Ø LDA ≠ASC"/
23ØØ JSR &FFE3
23IØ
     doon
232Ø INX
233Ø LDA string,X
2340 BEO thatsall
235Ø JSR &FFE3
236Ø BRA doon
237Ø \
238Ø thatsall
239Ø JMP restore
2400
     notCR
24ÎØ JSR trytıme
242Ø BCC spaces
243Ø JMP restore
244Ø \
245Ø spaces
246Ø LDA (&F2),Y
247Ø CMP ≠32
248Ø BNE none
249Ø INY
2500 BRA spaces
25IØ \
252Ø none
253Ø AND ≠&DF
254Ø CMP ≠ASC"O"
255Ø BEQ tryN
256Ø JMP restore
257Ø \
258Ø tryN
259Ø INY
26ØØ LDA(&F2),Y
261Ø AND ≠&DF
262Ø CMP ≠ASC"N"
263Ø BNE tryF
264Ø LDY ≠Î
265Ø BRA write
266Ø \
267Ø
     tryF
268Ø CMP ≠ASC'F"
269Ø BEQ yesF
27ØØ JMP restore
     yesF
27IØ
272Ø \
273Ø LDY ≠Ø
```

274Ø write 275Ø CLC

```
276Ø LDA &F4
277Ø ADC ≠3Ø
278Ø TAX
279Ø LDA ≠162
28ØØ JSR &FFF4
2810 JMP finished
282Ø \
283Ø trytime
284Ø DEY
285Ø LDX ≠255
286Ø loopt
287Ø INY
288Ø INX
289Ø CPX≠4
2900 BEQ ours
291Ø LDA (&F2),Y
292Ø AND ≠&DF
293Ø CMP string,X
2940 BEQ loopt
295Ø SEC
296Ø RTS
297Ø \
298Ø ours
299Ø CLC
3ØØØ RTS
3ØIØ ]
3Ø2Ø NEXT
3Ø3Ø ENDPROC
3Ø4Ø
3Ø5Ø DEF PROCchecksum
3Ø6Ø N%=Ø
3070 FOR X%=&5000 TO &520E
3Ø8Ø N%=N%+?X%
3Ø9Ø NEXT
3100 IF N%=64511 THEN ENDPROC
3IIØ VDU 7
312Ø PRINT"Assembler error!"
```

313Ø STOP

Chapter Ten Booting ROMs

ROMs may be turned on at a 'hard reset' -- by depressing a particular key while also pressing the CTRL and BREAK keys example, holding the D key down together For BREAK together (written CTRL-D-BREAK) and pressing CTRL and the disc filing system be booted In a similar will the A key down when pressing CTRL-BREAK hold manner, select the Advanced Disc Filing System (CTRL-A-BREAK) to If you have an Econet board fitted then you can boot the Advanced Network Filing System by pressing down This auto selection does CTRL-BREAK (CTRL-N-BREAK) not happen by magic - obviously the ROM concerned must look chosen key is being depressed at the same to see if its time, and if so take the necessary action facilitate To this a service call is provided - number 3 - and ROMs which can take advantage of it should test for it and trap in the normal fashion

Service call 3 is not issued by the MOS at every hard reset. When this occurs the MOS looks at the keyboard to see if any other key(s) is being pressed. Only if one is will it issue a service call 3

Once the service call is caught the first step is to 'look' at the keyboard to see what 'other' key was being pressed This is performed by OSBYTE &7A which will return the INTERNAL key number of any key detected in the X register Note this is the internal key number as used by the Master itself Table IØ I lists the internal number for each key

Obviously you will need to choose a key that is not being used to auto-boot another ROM so beware of choosing letters such as D, A, N and F (which is also used by the ADFS)

In the example program detailed here two boot options are

Key	ASCII	INKEY	Кеу	ASCII	INKEY
SPACE	32	&62	•	44	<u>866</u>
-	45	&17		46	&67
/	47	&68	Ø	48	& 27
Î 3 5	49	& 3,Ø	2	5ø	1 83
3	51	113	4	52	&12
5	53	£1 3	6	54	&34
7	55	&24	8	56	&15
9	57	& 25		58	&48
•	59	&57		64	&47
A	65	&4I	В	66	&64
C	67	&52	D	68	€32
E	69	&22	F	7ø	&43
G	7 Î	&53	H	72	&54
I	73	& 26	J	74	& 45
K	75	&46	L	76	&56
M	77	&65	N	78	&55
0	79	&36	P	8ø	&37
Q	18	&Iø	R	82	&33
S	83	£5Î	T	84	&23
U	85	& 35	V	86	&63
W	87	&21	X	88	&42
Y	89	&44	Z	9ø	163
[16	&38	Ž	92	&78
1	93	&58		94	813
_	95	&28	ESCAPE	27	& 7,Ø
TAB	9	&6Ø	CAPSLK		& 4.0
CTRL		£1	SHIFTLK		&5Ø
SHIFT		&Ø	DELETE	Î 27	&59
COPY		&69	RETURN	13	&49
UP CRSR		&39	DN CRSR		& 29
LT CRSR		&19	RT CRSR		&79
fø		& 2Ø	fÎ		&7 1
f2		&72	f3		&73
f4		&14	f5		&74
f6		&75	£7		&16
f8		&76	f9		&77

Table IØ I Internal key numbers

provided The first allows you to catalogue a disc by pressing CTRL-C-BREAK, and the second will instigate the ROM Filing System (examined in Chapter I4) with CTRL-R-BREAK

Therefore we need to test the X register for the internal key codes for the letters C and R, that is &52 and &33

boot

respectively The coding to do this is given in the following lines

```
PHA
                 \ save registers
PHX
PHY
LDA ≠&7A
                 \ read keyboard
JSR &FFF4
                 \ was it a 'C'?
CPX ≠&52
                 \ yes so do *CAT
BEQ cat
CPX ≠&33
                 \ was it an 'R'?
                 \ yes so do *ROM
BEQ rom
                \ else restore and return
JMP restore
```

If a 'C' is detected then before we can *CAT the disc, the disc filing system must be selected. To do this we place the command *DISC (abbreviated to *DI) into the input buffer using OSBYTE &8A X should contain Ø and the Y register the ASCII value of the character to be inserted Writing a return character (ASCII I3) will complete the operation. Before doing this the keyboard buffer should be flushed with OSBYTE I5 to remove any surplus keypresses.

```
LDA ≠15
                \ flush buffers
JSR &FFF4
LDA ≠&8A
                \ character insert code
LDX ≠Ø
LDY #ASC("*")
                \ insert *
JSR &FFF4
LDY ≠ASC("D")
                \ insert D
JSR &FFF4
                \ insert I
LDY ≠ASC("I")
JSR &FFF4
LDY #ASC(" ")
                \ insert
JSR &FFF4
                \ do *DI
LDY ≠13
JSR &FFF4
```

The next action is to catalogue the disc using * as an abbreviation for *CAT

```
LDA #&8A \ character insert code

LDX #Ø

LDY #ASC("*") \ insert *

JSR &FFF4

LDY #ASC(" ") \ insert

JSR &FFF4

LDY #I3 \ do *CAT

JSR &FFF4
```

All that remains is for the stack to be pulled and the accumulator loaded with zero to acknowledge a successful boot

The *ROM coding is the same except that we insert *ROM into the keyboard buffer, remembering to flush it first of all though

```
LDA ≠15
JSR &FFF4
                \ flush buffers
LDA ≠&8A
                \ character insert code
LDX ≠Ø
LDY #ASC("*")
                \ insert *
JSR &FFF4
LDY ≠ASC("R")
                \ insert R
JSR &FFF4
LDY ≠ASC("O")
                \ insert 0
JSR &FFF4
LDY ≠ASC("M")
               \ insert M
JSR &FFF4
LDY ≠13
                \ do *ROM
JSR &FFF4
```

Before restoring the registers the routine prints a short filing system message on to the screen to signify that the ROM filing system is active

Entering the Program

You can use program 4 3 (saved as 'HELP3') as the basis for listing IØ I and make the changes and additions detailed below Once complete save the program as 'BOOT'

```
Listing IØ I Sets up two boot options CTRL-C-BREAK will
catalogue a disc, CTRL-R-BREAK will set up the ROM Filing
System Save as BOOT Can be adapted from listing 4 3
(HELP3)
   IØ REM Autoboot ROM
   20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   30 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø
   5Ø PROCassemble
   55 PROCchecksum
   6Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6
   7Ø END
   8Ø DEF PROCassemble
   9Ø osnewl=&FFE7
  100 comline=&F2
  110 FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
  12Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
  13Ø [
  140 OPT pass
  15Ø EQUB Ø
  16ø equw ø
  17Ø JMP service
  18Ø EQUB &82
  19Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
  2ØØ EQUB I
  210 title
  22Ø EQUS "CTRL Boot ROM'
  23Ø EQUB Ø
  24Ø version
  25Ø EQUS " Î ØØ
  26Ø EQUB Ø
      offset
  27Ø
  28Ø EQUB Ø
  29Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
  3ØØ EQUB Ø
  31Ø service
  3ÎÎ CMP ≠3
   312 BNE tryhelp
   313 JMP boot
   314 tryhelp
   32Ø CMP ≠9
   33Ø BNE nothelp
   34Ø PHA
   35Ø PHX
   36Ø PHY
   37Ø LDA (comline),Y
   38Ø CMP ≠13
39Ø BNE check
   400 JSR help
```

```
4ÎØ LDX ≠255
420 details
43Ø INX
440 LDA command, X
45Ø BEQ donecommand
46Ø JSR &FFE3
47Ø BRA details
48Ø donecommand
49Ø JSR osnewl
500 BRA restore
51Ø \
52Ø check
53Ø LDX ≠255
54Ø DEY
55Ø again
56Ø INX
57Ø INY
580 LDA (comline),Y
59Ø AND ≠&DF
600 CMP com, X
6ÎØ BEQ agaın
62Ø LDA com, X
63Ø CMP ≠&FE
64Ø BEO mine
65Ø
    restore
66Ø PLY
67Ø PLX
68Ø PLA
69Ø nothelp
7ØØ RTS
71Ø \
72Ø help
73Ø JSR osnewl
74Ø LDX ≠&FF
75Ø JSR helploop
76Ø JSR helploop
77Ø JSR osnewl
78Ø RTS
79Ø \
8ØØ
    helploop
XNI Q18
82Ø LDA title,X
83Ø BEQ done
84Ø JSR &FFE3
85Ø BRA helploop
86Ø done
87Ø RTS
88Ø mine
```

```
Listing IØ I continued
  89Ø JSR help
  9ØØ LDX ≠255
  9IØ
      more
  92Ø INX
  93Ø LDA lists,X
  94Ø BMI alldone
  95Ø JSR &FFE3
96Ø BRA more
  97Ø alldone
  98Ø PLY
  99Ø PLX
 ÍØØØ PLA
 IØIØ LDA ≠Ø
 IØ2Ø RTS
 IØ3Ø
       COM
 IØ4Ø EQUS"BOOT"
 1Ø5Ø EQUB &FE
 IØ6Ø
      command
 1070 EQUS" Boot"
 1080 EQUB Ø
       lısts
 IØ9Ø
              CTRL-C-BREAK Catalogue D
 IIØØ EQUS "
ısc"
 IIIØ EQUB I3
 112Ø EQUS " CTRL-R-BREAK
                                ROM Filing
System"
 113Ø EQUB 13
 114Ø EQUB &FF
 115Ø \
 II6Ø
       boot
 117Ø PHA
  118Ø PHX
  119Ø PHY
  12ØØ LDA ≠&7A
  121Ø JSR &FFF4
  122Ø CPX ≠&52
  123Ø BEQ cat
  124Ø CPX ≠&33
  1250 BEQ rom
1260 JMP restore
  127Ø \
  128Ø
       cat
  129Ø LDA ≠15
  13ØØ JSR &FFF4
  1310 LDA ≠&8A
1320 LDX ≠0
  133Ø LDY #ASC("*")
  134Ø JSR &FFF4
```

```
Listing IØ I continued
 135Ø LDY ≠ASC("D")
 136Ø JSR &FFF4
137Ø LDY ≠ASC("I")
 138Ø JSR &FFF4
139Ø LDY #ASC(" ')
1400 JSR &FFF4
141Ø LDY ≠13
142Ø JSR &FFF4
Î43Ø LDA ≠&8A
Î44Ø LDX ≠Ø
145Ø LDY ≠ASC("*")
146Ø JSR &FFF4
Î47Ø LDY ≠ASC("
148Ø JSR &FFF4
149Ø LDY ≠13
1500 JSR &FFF4
1510 JMP out
152Ø \
153Ø
      rom
154Ø LDA ≠15
155Ø LDA ≠&8A
156Ø LDX ≠Ø
157Ø LDY ≠ASC("*")
158Ø JSR &FFF4
159Ø LDY ≠ASC("R")
1600 JSR &FFF4
161Ø LDY ≠ASC('O")
162Ø JSR &FFF4
163Ø LDY ≠ASC("M")
164Ø JSR &FFF4
165Ø LDY ≠13
166Ø JSR &FFF4
167Ø \
168Ø LDX ≠255
169Ø rfs
17ØØ INX
1710 LDA romfs,X
172Ø BEQ out
173Ø JSR &FFE3
174Ø BRA rfs
175Ø \
176Ø
     out
177Ø PLY
178Ø PLX
179Ø PLA
I8ØØ LDA ≠Ø
181Ø RTS
182Ø \
```

1830 romfs
1840 EQUS "ROM Filing System"
1850 EQUD & ØDØD
1860 EQUB Ø
1870 }
1880 NEXT
1890 ENDPROC
1900
1910 DEF PROCChecksum
1920 N%=0
1930 FOR X%=&5000 TO &5183
1940 N%=N%+7X%

1950 NEXT 1960 IF N% = 45718 THEN ENDPROC 1970 VDU 7

1970 VDO 7 1980 PRINT"Assembler error!" 1990 STOP

Chapter Eleven Workspace

Finding workspace in which ROM software can perform calculations and keep tabs on various values and addresses can be problematic when writing service ROMs Language ROMs are no problem as they are allowed a free run of the memory map and need avoid only the space allocated to the MOS and VDU drivers But service ROMs are another matter. They must interact with the current language ROM and not corrupt any of its or the MOS's data. One way was mentioned earlier - to use the zero page user's area from &70 to &8F inclusive, preserving its contents first by copying it onto the bottom of the

&DFFF	
ⅅØØ	MOS workspace
	Paged ROM
&CØØØ	workspace
&8FFF	
c 0 0 4 4	Character font
&89ØØ	VDU variables
&88øø	vbo variables
.0444	VDU workspace
&84ØØ	Coft loss by 66
&8ØØØ	Soft key buffer

Figure II I Hidden memory map

129

stack and restoring it by copying it back before returning While this method works it does not provide any permanent means of storing data across several commands or actions However, there is a way by which service ROMs can grab their own memory in steps of 256 bytes - a memory page at a time

Figure II I shows how the I2k of 'hidden' memory is arranged This contains the function key definition buffer, MOS drivers, exploded character fonts and, most importantly, ROM workspace This ROM workspace is a 7 25k block that stretches from &CDDD to &DCFF inclusive - 29 pages of memory in all, which is free

for use by ROMs

However this is not all for our use remember that the Master comes fitted with a host of firmware and two of these, the DFS and the ADFS bite heavily into this but more on this in a moment

Static and Dynamic

There are two types of ROM workspace The first is the 'static' type, so called because it has fixed start and end boundaries. The start is &CØØØ and the end can be any value up to a maximum of &DBFF Static workspace is open to all ROMs - generally to use as they wish, although before doing so they must inform other ROMs of their needs via service call TØ The second type of ROM workspace is 'dynamic', which has a moveable boundary and depends on a ROM or ROM's requirements. Any ROM can claim its own 'private' workspace that only it has access to Thus important data and information can be stored away without fear of corruption by other ROMs or the MOS

Obviously there is only a finite amount of private workspace within the alloted 7 25k hidden RAM If this is exceeded then the ROM workspace is moved into the user RAM starting at PAGE, which you mightn't notice, but the user will when using a program where memory is tight! As a general rule it should be considered as bad form to exceed and break out of the hidden RAM workspace

Now let's go through the the service calls associated with this workspace

Service Call 36 (&24)

This is the second call issued by the MOS after a hard reset and it asks ROMs to indicate how much private workspace they will require However, it does not actually allocate any workspace

On entry the Y register will contain the page number of the current upper limit of the private workspace All that ROMs need do is to increment the Y register by the number of pages of memory required If one page is required they increment it once, if two are required then increment it twice and so forth On completion the accumulator should be cleared, thus

```
call36
INY \ only one page (256 bytes) needed
LDA ≠Ø \ acknowledge
RTS \ and return
```

Note how simple it is With all the calls discussed here it is vitally important that the Y register is treated with respect It must not be decremented, or a crash is sure to result!

Service Call 33 (&21)

This is the next service call issued Its action is similar to the call above but is more concerned with static workspace, that is, workspace that may be used by all ROMs, though only one at a time workspace starts at &CØØØ and has an upper limit &DBFF, which should not be exceeded Any ROM which requires static workspace should check the contents of the Y register on receiving the call If there is not enough space then Y should be incremented to the desired value It should not go beyond &DB at any time For example, if a ROM requires static workspace from &C000 to &D600 then if the contents of the Y register are less than &D6, Y should be loaded with &D6 If the contents are higher then they should not be altered in any way

```
call33
CPY ≠&D6 \ 1s it?
BCC loadit \ branch if less than
JMP return \ enough, so return
loadit
LDY ≠&D6 \ set Y to our requirements
JMP return
```

Service Call 34 (&22)

This call allows ROMs to locate their own private workspace in hidden RAM. The first two calls detailed above allow the MOS to calculate where this begins, and then use this call to inform each ROM just where its

own private workspace starts On issuing the service call the Y register contains the value of the first free page If the ROM is claiming private workspace it must save the current contents of the Y register in a special ROM workspace table that runs from &DFØ Table II I details the byte associated with each ROM

ROM number	Table byte
	& DFØ
Ø	
Î	&DFI
2	& DF 2
3	& DF 3
4	& DF 4
5	&DF5
6	&DF6
7	&DF7
8	& DF 8
9	&DF9
1ø	&DFA
11	&DFB
12	&DFC
1 3	&DFD
14	&DFE
1 5	&DFF

Table II I ROM workspace

ROM 6 would therefore place the Y register contents at &DF6 However, firmware can be placed in any one of Is slots, so the correct way to locate the correct ROM table position is to use the X register as an index

```
LDX &F4 \ get ROM position
TYA \ move Y across
STA &DFØ,X \ and save
```

The contents of the Y register can then be incremented by the desired amount to make space for the current ROM's private area before the 'new' base value is passed back to the MOS It is important that you only claim the number of pages specified during service call 36 (&24)

Whenever the private workspace is needed its start address can be obtained from the table and used with indirect addressing as required Further details on this along with a working program example can be found below

Service Call I

This service call provides compatibility with standard BBC micros and should be used by BBC B, B+ and B+128 users. Its purpose is akin to that of service call 36 in that it is trying to determine the total amount of shared workspace required by ROMs. The memory used for this is not in private RAM but is claimed directly above PAGE, ie from &EØØ, and as such will reduce the amount of programming memory available to the user

When this service call is issued the Y register contains the page number of the present upper limit of this absolute workspace. This value should be checked by a ROM requiring workspace. If the value is less than that required then the value of the Y register should be incremented until there is sufficient memory.

As an example, consider that a ROM you are writing requires two pages of RAM for workspace. The coding to check and implement this might look like this

```
CMP ≠I
                   \ was it absolute claim?
BNE next
                   \ branch if not
CPY ≠&ÎØ
                   \ is it >= &E\emptyset\emptyset+&2\emptyset\emptyset?
BCC no
                   \ branch if needs incrementing
RTS
                  \ all okay so return
 no
                  \ is it +1 or +2°
\ branch if only one page
CPY ≠&ØE
BNE one
INY
                  \ increment page value
 one
INY
                   \ increment page value
RTS
                   \ and return
```

It is vital that the value in the Y register is not decremented, as this could lead to corrupted programs

Service Call 2

This call is issued after service call I has been completed It allows ROMs to claim their very own private workspace area above the static workspace area. This area of memory is exclusive to the ROM claiming it and may not be used by any other ROM. Trapping this call and storing the Y register in the ROM table is performed as described above when servicing call &22

Using Private Workspace

Because of the way the sideways RAM/ROM memory is addressed, it is not possible to read and write

directly to the area of memory designated as private workspace for a particular ROM. The reasons for this are somewhat technical, but it is not necessary to understand them to use the private workspace. (The reasons are discussed below for readers who are more technically-minded.) For the general reader it is sufficient to know that before any information is written to or read from private RAM the following code must be performed.

writeon LDA ≠8 TSB &FE34

And on completion the following code

writeoff LDA ≠&F7 TRB &FE34

IMPORTANT Once you have performed 'writeon' you cannot use any of the regular MOS calls until 'writeoff' is performed

Listing II I demonstrates the use of private RAM workspace to implement two new commands, these are *PUSH and *PULL *PUSH saves the contents of zero page locations &70 to &8F to private workspace, while *PULL will restore them This routine will allow you to use these locations for workspace without fear of losing the contents of this area

The two routines 'writeon' and 'writeoff' are used to select and de-select the private workspace as described above Of course these two routines need only be used when private RAM is being used in the hidden RAM If service calls I and 2 have been trapped then the private workspace will be located in normal RAM above &EDD and this can be read from and written to in the normal manner

The actual *PUSH and *PULL routines can be located in lines 2020 to 2190 inclusive

Once entered, save the program as 'PRIVATE'

Using Static Workspace

Static workspace is straightforward to use, but before you do you must inform the other ROMs in your computer by issuing service call $I\emptyset$ (& \emptyset A) This is done with OSBYTE 143, with the X register holding the service call number

```
LDA \neq143 \ OSBYTE code

LDX \neq10 \ service call number

LDY \neq255

JSR &FFF4
```

Once this has been done the ROM is free to use the static workspace. It is a good idea to keep a flag within the ROM's private workspace so that the ROM can determine whether it has use of the static workspace at any time.

Obviously a ROM that is capable of claiming static workspace must also be capable of releasing it so therefore the service call software must be capable of trapping service call IØ On receiving the call the ROM should save any vital information in private workspace, and generally close up shop Once this has been done the accumulator should be loaded with zero before returning

As with private workspace, static workspace can only be used after 'writeon' has been performed No MOS calls can be used until 'writeoff' has be completed Similarly if the static RAM is located in normal memory above &EDD then read-write can be performed directly

For the Technically Inclined

Location &FE34 is the Access Control Latch, ACCCON for short The state of individual bits within this latch determine what areas of memory are in use at any time. It effectively dictates the activity of two regions of memory

- 1) &3ØØØ to &7FFF
- 2) &CØØØ to &DFFF

It is the second area we are concerned with here - this is the static and private ROM workspace in the hidden RAM

As our firmware is itself in paged memory it cannot directly access the private and static workspace in the hidden RAM which is mapped in a similar area what the routine 'writeon' does is to overlay this area on the MOS, so that it appears 'above' the firmware using it It therefore 'covers' the MOS, and in particular the VDU drivers which therefore cannot be seen It is for this reason that firmware should not attempt to use them, until the hidden RAM is removed from this area by the 'writeoff' routine What these two routines do is to toggle bit 3 within ACCCON - this is the bit that determines whether the hidden RAM is overlaid or not

Workspace 135

To overlay the hidden RAM this bit must be set, but do not disturb the other bits in this latch which have specific functions themselves

```
LDA \neq 8 \ set bit 3, ie \emptyset\emptyset\emptyset\emptyset 1000 TSB &FE34 \ test and reset bit in latch
```

Removing the hidden RAM, thus giving access to the MOS calls again, simply involves clearing bit 3 in the ACCCON latch Again the status of the other bits in the latch must be preserved so the AND operator should be used

LDA #&F7 \ clear bit 3, ie IIII ØIII
TRB &FE34 \ test and reset bit in latch

Workspace

Listing II I implements two new commands, *PUSH and *PULL to demonstrate use of private RAM workspace Save as PRIVATE

```
IØ REM Private Workspace ROM
 20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 4Ø
 5Ø PROCassemble
 6Ø PROCchecksum
 7Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 6
 8Ø END
 9Ø
IØØ DEF PROCassemble
IIØ osnewl=&FFE7
12Ø osasci=&FFE3
13Ø comline=&F2
140 FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
15Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
16Ø [
170 OPT pass
18Ø EQUB Ø
19Ø EQUW Ø
200 JMP service
21Ø EQUB &82
22Ø EQUB offset MOD 256
23Ø EOUB I
24Ø title
25 Ø EQUS "Private Workspace ROM"
26Ø EQUB Ø
27Ø version
28Ø EQUS ' 1 ØØ"
29Ø EQUB Ø
3ØØ
    offset
31Ø EQUB Ø
320 EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
33Ø EQUB Ø
34Ø service
35Ø CMP ≠34
36Ø BNE try36
37Ø JMP 1ts34
38Ø try36
39Ø CMP ≠36
4ØØ BNE tryhelp
41Ø JMP its36
42Ø tryhelp
43Ø PHA
44Ø PHX
45Ø PHY
46Ø CMP ≠9
```

137

Listing II I continued

```
47Ø BNE nothelp
480 LDA (comline),Y
49Ø CMP ≠13
500 BNE check
510 JSR help
52Ø LDX ≠255
53Ø
    details
54Ø INX
55Ø LDA command, X
56Ø BEQ donecommand
57Ø JSR &FFE3
58Ø BRA details
59Ø
    donecommand
600 JSR osnewl
61Ø BRA restore
62Ø \
63Ø check
64Ø LDX ≠255
65Ø DEY
66Ø
    again
67Ø INX
68Ø INY
69Ø LDA (comline),Y
7ØØ AND ≠&DF
710 CMP com, X
72Ø BEQ again
73Ø LDA com,X
74Ø CMP ≠&FE
75Ø BEQ mine
76Ø restore
77Ø PLY
78Ø PLX
79Ø PLA
8ØØ RTS
8ÎØ \
82Ø nothelp
83Ø CMP ≠4
84Ø BEQ unrecognised
85Ø BRA alldone
86Ø \
87Ø help
88Ø JSR osnewl
89Ø LDX ≠&FF
900 JSR helploop
910 JSR helploop
92Ø JSR osnewl
93Ø RTS
```

94Ø \

```
95Ø
      helploop
 96Ø INX
 97Ø LDA title,X
 98Ø BEQ done
 99Ø JSR &FFE3
IØØØ BRA helploop
IØIØ
      done
IØ2Ø RTS
1Ø3Ø \
IØ4Ø
     mine
1050 JSR help
1Ø6Ø LDX ≠255
IØ7Ø
      more
IØ8Ø INX
IØ9Ø LDA lists,X
IIØØ BMI alldone
IIIØ JSR &FFE3
112Ø BRA more
113Ø \
ÎÎ4Ø alldone
II5Ø PLY
II6Ø PLX
ÎÎ7Ø PLA
118Ø RTS
119Ø \
I2ØØ
     com
1210 EQUS COMMANDS"
122Ø EQUB &FE
1230 command
124Ø EQUS"
           Commands"
125Ø EOUB Ø
126Ø
     lists
127Ø EOUS
             PUSH"
128Ø EQUB 13
129Ø EQUS "
             PULL"
1300 EQUB 13
1310 EOUB &FF
132Ø \
1330 unrecognised
Î34Ø LDX ≠255
Î35Ø DEY
136Ø PHY
137Ø
     identify
138Ø INX
139Ø INY
1400 LDA (comline),Y
141Ø AND ≠&DF
1420 CMP comtable,X
```

```
1430 BEQ identify
1440 LDA comtable,X
1450 BMI address
146Ø \
1470
     moveon
148Ø INX
149Ø LDA comtable,X
1500 BPL moveon
1510 BNE notend
152Ø PLY
153Ø BRA alldone
154Ø \
155Ø
     notend
156Ø INX
157Ø PLY
158Ø PHY
159Ø JMP identify 1600 \
1610
     address
162Ø CMP ≠&FF
163Ø BNE notFF
164Ø PLY
165Ø BRA alldone
166Ø
     notFF
167Ø \
168Ø STA &39
169Ø INX
1700 LDA comtable,X
171Ø STA &38
172Ø JMP (&38)
173Ø \
1740 comtable
175Ø EQUS "PUSH"
176Ø EQUB push DIV 256
177Ø EQUB push MOD 256
178Ø EQUS 'PULL"
179Ø EQUB pull DIV 256
1800 EQUB pull MOD 256
1810 EQUB &FF
182Ø \
183Ø found
184Ø PLY
185Ø PLY
186Ø PLX
187Ø PLA
1880 okay
189Ø LDA ≠Ø
1900 RTS
```

```
191Ø \
192Ø
    ıts36
193Ø INY
1940 BRA okay
195Ø \
196Ø its34
197Ø TYA LDX &F4
198Ø STA &DFØ.X
199Ø INY
2000 BRA okay
2Ø2Ø push
2030 JSR writeon
2Ø4Ø LDX &F4
2Ø5Ø LDA &DFØ,X
2Ø6Ø STA &39
2Ø7Ø LDY ≠Ø
2Ø8Ø STY &38
2Ø9Ø DEY
2ÎØØ
     pushloop
211Ø INY
212Ø LDA &7Ø,Y
213Ø STA (&38),Y
214Ø CPY ≠&1F
215Ø BNE pushloop
216Ø JSR writeoff
217Ø JMP found
218Ø \
     pull
219Ø
22ØØ JSR writeon
221Ø LDX &F4
222Ø LDA &DFØ,X
223Ø STA &39
224Ø LDY ≠Ø
225Ø STY &38
226Ø DEY
227Ø
      pullloop
228Ø INY
229Ø LDA (&38),Y
23ØØ STA &7Ø,Y
23ÎØ CPY ≠&ÎF
232Ø BNE pullloop
233Ø JSR writeoff
 234Ø BRA found
 235Ø \
 236Ø
      writeon
 237Ø LDA ≠8
 238Ø ORA &FE34
```

141

1

259Ø STOP

```
239Ø STA &FE34
24ØØ RTS
24ÎØ \
242Ø writeoff
243Ø LDA ≠&F7
244Ø AND &FE34
245Ø STA &FE34
246Ø RTS
247Ø ]
248Ø NEXT
249Ø ENDPROC
25ØØ
251Ø DEF PROCchecksum
252Ø N%=Ø
253Ø FOR X%=&5ØØØ TO &517C
254Ø N%=N%+7X%
255Ø NEXT
256Ø IF N%=46643 THEN ENDPROC
257Ø VDU 7
258Ø PRINT"Assembler error'"
```

Chapter Twelve **ROM Calls**

The switch that controls which of the sideways ROMs is paged in at any time is software controlled Ιn fact particular ROM is selected simply by writing the binary representation of the ROM socket number, into the low four bits of the paged ROM select register at &FE3Ø The MOS keeps a copy of this at location &F4 and this must also be written to when you wish to select a particular ROM in this way The coding required to select a particular sideways ROM is very simple. For example, to select the ROM in ROM socket 15 the coding would be

```
LDX ≠15
                \ load X register with ROM number
STX &F4
                \ write RAM copy
STX &FE3Ø
                \ write to ROM select register
```

Note the order in which the ROM slot number is written must be written to the RAM copy at &F4 first Performing the operation in reverse could cause the Master to crash if an interrupt was to occur during the two write operations Note also that &FE3Ø should never be read - always use &F4 when you wish to ascertain the ROM number Poking these directly from BASIC or any other language will almost certainly result in the Master hanging up
In addition to location &F4 there are several other bytes

within zero page RAM that are associated with the ROM

These are detailed in Table I2 I

We have already used the vectored address at &F2 several To recap, the MOS uses it as a text pointer for processing commands Normally it holds the address of the first character after the asterisk in the command, and the Y register holds the 'post indirect index' to the command

Address	Function Text pointer vector Value of currently selected ROM							
&F2 - &F3 &F4								
	(copy of ROM select register)							
&F6 - &F7	Vectored address of current position in paged ROM							
Table Î2 Î	Paged ROM associated RAM addresses							

Finally, the vectored address at &F6 holds the exact address of a position in a paged ROM (see below) Manipulating any of these addresses including the paged ROM select register must be done from machine code, otherwise the Master will hang up

Operating System Read ROM Call (OSRDRM)

At &FFB9 is the 'operating system read byte from paged ROM' call - OSRDRM for short This call allows single bytes within paged ROMs to be read from machine code or from other paged ROMs On entry the Y register should contain the number of the ROM to be read, while the vector at &F6 holds the address of the byte to be read On return from OSRDRM the accumulator contains the byte itself Listing I2 I illustrates how this call can be used to read the BASIC title string The program begins by poking the address vector at &F6 with the start address of the title string, &8008 (lines 120 to 150) The print 'loop' is entered at line 160 As we are entering the machine code from BASIC itself then the ROM socket number of BASIC can be extracted directly from &F4 (line 170) The low byte of

OSBYFE	Function					
<u>&16 (22)</u>	Increment ROM polling semaphore					
&17 (23)	Decrement ROM polling semaphore					
&8D (141)	Perform *ROM					
&8E (142)	Enter language ROM					
&8F (143)	Issue service request					
&A8 (168)	Read address of ROM pointer table					
&AA (17Ø)	Read address of ROM information table					
&B3 (179)	Read/Write ROM polling semaphore					
&BA (186)	Read number of ROM active at last BRK/error					
&BB (187)	Read number of socket holding BASIC ROM					
&FC (252)	Read/write current language ROM number					

Table 12 2 OSBYTE calls associated with sideways ROMs

the address to be read is incremented (line 180), and the byte is read (line 190). A zero byte will indicate the end of the title string so this is tested for by line 200, otherwise the byte in the accumulator is printed and the loop re-executed (lines 210 to 220). If you have several sideways ROMs present then their title strings can be printed simply by altering line 170

ROM Byte

There are several OSBYTE calls associated with the sideways ROM system, these are outlined here Table 12 2 lists the associated calls

OSBYTE &16 (*FX 22)

This causes the MOS to begin issuing service call number &15 (21) 100 times every second. See Chapter 8 for details

OSBYTE &17 (*FX 23)

Stops MOS issuing service call number &15 (21) Chapter 8 has more details

OSBYTE &8D (*FX 141)

Allows the *ROM filing system to be selected There are no set up entry parameters and the accumulator contents are preserved See Chapter 13 for full details of the ROM filing system

OSBYTE &8E (*FX 142)

This call will boot up a selected language ROM On entry the X register contains the socket number of the language to be entered To enter View from BASIC or any other language, use

*FX 142,14

View being in socket number 14 (&E)

OSBYTE &8F (*FX143)

This call will cause the MOS to issue a paged ROM service request. Thus any ROM can get the MOS to issue a particular service call at any time it wishes. The entry parameters for this call are that the X register contains the service code and the Y register the service argument, if any On exit the Y register may return a result if appropriate

OSBYTE &A8 (*FX 168)

This call returns the address of a ROM pointer table containing vectored addresses for entry into ROMs This subject is dealt with in chapter 7 On exit from the call

ROM Calls 145

the index registers return the address of the pointer table, low byte in X, high byte in Y. For the 3 20 MOS the address returned is &D9F

OSBYTE &AA (*FX 17Ø)

This call returns the address of a ROM information table that contains details of types of sideways ROMs present in the Master This information table is detailed in Chapter II The address is returned in the index registers - low byte in X, high byte in Y For the 3 20 MOS this address is \$2AI

OSBYTE &B3 (*FX 179)

Using this call it is possible to read or write the state of the ROM polling semaphore

A=179 X=n $Y=\emptyset$ will read the semaphore into X and set the state to n

A=179 X=Ø Y=255 reads semaphore into X

Note that use of this call to set the state directly will interfere with *FX22 and *FX23

OSBYTE &BA (*FX 186)

This call returns the number of the ROM that was active when the last BRK error occurred The value is returned in the X register

OSBYTE &BB (*FX 187)

This call reads the number of the ROM socket which contains the BASIC ROM The number is returned in the X register Chapter 14 contains details of its use to re-boot BASIC to exit from another language ROM

OSBYTE &FC (*FX 252)

This call returns the number of the ROM socket containing the current language ROM in the X register. It is written to whenever a new language ROM is booted with OSBYTE &8E Listing $\hat{I}2$ \hat{I} Reads BASIC title string to demonstrate OSRDRM Save as READ

```
10 REM Read title string from ROM
 20 REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 3Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 4Ø
 5Ø osrdrm=&FFB9
 6Ø osasci=&FFE3
 7Ø FOR pass=Ø TO 3 STEP 3
 8Ø P%=&AØØ
 9Ø [
100 OPT pass
IIØ readstring
12Ø LDA #&8Ø
13Ø STA &F7
14Ø LDA ≠8
15Ø STA &F6
I6Ø
    loop
17Ø LDY &F4
18Ø INC &F6
19Ø JSR osrdrm
200 BEQ out
210 JSR osascı
22Ø BNE loop
23Ø out
24Ø RTS
25Ø ]
26Ø NEXT
27Ø CALL readstring
```

Chapter Thirteen ROM Filing System

The ROM Filing System (RFS), may contain either BASIC or machine code programs and may be loaded, chained, or run as normal Table I3 I lists the commands and operating system calls with the RFS, which is selected

by the *ROM command

As with any other filing system, eg tape, disc, ADFS, files must be saved to a particular format. In the case of RFS they must be formatted as an image that can be loaded directly into sideways RAM or blown into an EPROM. The number of files stored per ROM image is limited only by the amount of space within the sideways RAM block. Thus RFS-formatted images may be up to 16k in length.

Just like any other software that is to be placed in sideways RAM, the RFS image must contain a standard header along with a service entry point and any relevant coding. In addition to any standard *HELP messages, etc, that you may wish to include, service

```
LOAD
*CAT
*EXEC
*LOAD
*RUN
OSARGS (filing system identification only)
OSBGET
OSFILE (save is not possible)
OSFIND (output opening is not possible)
```

Table 13 1 ROM Filing System commands and calls

calls $\hat{I}3$ (& \emptyset D) and $\hat{I}4$ (& \emptyset E) must be caught and processed as these inform the MOS of the RFS details

Service Call 13

This is the RFS initialisation call. It is issued by the MOS when a filing system command is used while the RFS is active. It allows a ROM to inform the MOS that it contains a ROM image, along with the start address. The service call number is held in the accumulator on

The service call number is held in the accumulator on entry and the Y register contains a number which is 15 minus the number of the next ROM to be scanned. If this value is less than the number of the current ROM being investigated then the ROM should ignore the service call as it has already been processed earlier. If not, the current ROM's number (at &F4) should be put in the accumulator and placed in zero page location &F5. This is an important step as it indicates to the MOS that an RFS-formatted ROM is present.

The final act of the ROM header coding should be to place the start address of the ROM file data into the vector at &F6 and &F7 To complete the call and inform the MOS that the current ROM is now active the call should return with the accumulator holding zero

entry CMP ≠13 \ service call I3? BNE tryagaın \ if not branch over PHA \ push accumulator TYA Y holds ROM number EOR ≠15 \ calculate (15-ROM number) CMP &F4 \ less than current ROM \ number? BCC return \ yes if carry clear so \ return LDA ≠filename MOD 256 \ low byte file start \ address STA &F6 \ save in vector low byte LDA ≠filename DIV 256 \ high byte file start \ address STA &F7 \ save in vector high byte LDA &F4 \ get current ROM number EOR ≠15 \ restore ROM number on \ entry STA &F5 \ save the flag JMP restore \ jump to exit routine return PLA \ restore service type RTS \ back to MOS tryagaın

The label 'filename' is used to mark the start of the programs in RFS format. In the formatting program presented later on, I have in fact given this an absolute address, namely &81 $\beta\beta$ and have therefore loaded these two bytes immediately into the accumulator on both occasions

Service Call 14

This call is a simple RFS 'get byte' routine To respond to this the current ROM must check location &F5 If this byte is equal to I5-?&F4, then the current ROM is indicated The MOS uses this call to read bytes from the ROM when performing filing system actions, such as *CAT, LOAD etc

To extract the correct byte the Y register must be cleared as used for post indirect address to peek the byte held at the vectored address in &F6. The read byte should be returned in the Y register with the accumulator clear to indicate that the call has been serviced correctly. The ROM byte request is handled as follows.

```
tryagaın
                 \ entry
                 \setminus 1s 1t ROM byte get?
CMP ≠&ØE
                 \ if not then branch to back
BNE back
                 \ save service call
PHA
                 \ get 'current' ROM value
LDA &F5
                 \ calculate (15-ROM number)
EOR ≠15
                 \ is it same as this ROM number?
CMP &F4
BNE return
                 \ no, it's another ROM so return
                 \ clear indexing register
LDY ≠Ø
                 \ read byte into accumulator
LDA (&F6),Y
                 \ move into Y register \ increment low byte vector
TAY
INC &F6
                  \ branch if not zero
BNE restore
                  \ else increment high byte of
INC &F7
                  \ vector
 restore
                  \ pull service type off stack
PLA
                  \ clear accumulator to indicate
LDA ≠Ø
                  \ that service has been performed
                  \ and back to MOS
RTS
```

Again, nothing too difficult in the coding. The service call handling routine is the minimum required. It can be expanded to include a *HELP service call, as in the formatting program (listing I3 I) where the above code can be seen in lines I740 to I9I0 inclusive. Standard service ROM utility programs and languages can be mixed.

with RFS formatted programs, as long as there is enough space and the correct service call coding is present

The ROM Image

The construction of the actual RFS program image is similar to the cassette filing system, using a block structure Each block consists of a header followed by the file data. The header construction is important and is laid out as follows.

- \$\text{I Synchronisation byte, &2A (ASCII"*")}
- 2 Filename, up to ten characters long
- 3 A filename terminating zero byte, &ØØ
- 4 File load address
- 5 File execution address
- 6 Two-byte block number
- 7 Two-byte block length
- 8 File flag
- 9 Address of first byte after end of file
- Two-byte header cyclic redundancy check (CRC)

The synchronisation byte must always be &2A (ASCII "*") so that the filename always looks as though it was in *RUN format, ie, *FILENAME A filename cannot be a null string so must contain a minimum of just one character though it must not exceed ten characters in length The filename is terminated with a zero byte. The load and execution addresses occupy four bytes, the low byte being stored first. The high two bytes provide space for a second or co-processor relocation address. The block number and length details consist of two bytes stored low byte first.

The file flag provides details about the file stored at bit level. Three bits are used thus

- Bit 7 If set, indicates this is the last block of the current file
- Bit 6 If set, indicates this block contains no data
- Bit Ø Protection bit If set, the file can only be *RUN

The function of bit 6 may seem odd at first sight An empty block can be created at ROM image formation time if the file is opened for output and then closed before any data can be written to it using BPUT

The header cyclic redundancy check (CRC) is contained in two bytes, stored high byte first. The CRC is an error check against data corruption. Each CRC is unique

to the item it refers to as it is calculated from all the data that it relates to A suitable algorithm for calculating the CRC of a piece of data would be

High Byte = data EOR high byte
For loop=I TO 8
Carry=Ø
IF (msb of high byte=I) THEN high and low bytes EOR
&8IØ Carry=I
high and low bytes=(high and low bytes*2+carry) AND
&FFFF
NEXT loop

After the header comes the file block which is, for a full block, 256 bytes. The last block of a file may be shorter if the file length is not exactly divisible by 256. The length of the block is specified in the two header bytes, block length. The file data is terminated by the two CRC bytes as calculated for the header CRC.

To save ROM space the header of file blocks, other than the first and last file blocks, may be abbreviated by a single character, the hash, '\neq' which is ASCII &43 If a hash header is used the MOS assumes the header details are the same as in the first file block

Finally, the end of the ROM image, that is the byte after the last file of the last program, is marked by an end-of-ROM marker, typically '+', ASCII code &2B This marker may be omitted only if the ROM image spans over to another ROM which must be positioned as the next ROM number in order of priority

ROM Filing System Vectors

As is common on the Master micro, indirect entry to the RFS processing is performed via the standard page two vectors. Table 13 2 lists the vectors changed by initialisation of the RFS and the address contained within them for the 3 20 MOS

Vector	Address	Indirection address
FILEV	&2 1 2	&FFÎB
ARGSV	&214	&FFIE
BGETV	&216	&FF2Î
BPUTV	&218	&FF24
GPPBV	&2ÎA	&FF27
FINDV	&21C	&FF2A
FSCV	&2ÎE	&FB69

Table 13 2 ROM Filing System Vectors

Table 13 2 indicates that provision for a OSBPUT has been included in the RFS vectored entry, but this is rather meaningless as a ROM may only be read from

ROM Image Formatter

Listing I3 I is a tried and tested ROM image formatting program Because of its use of random access filing, it will not work effectively on a tape-based system, and as such has been written with disc or net in mind. The program will read in specified files from the storage medium in use, and format them into a ROM image for use with the RFS. As written the program assumes that a I6k image is required though it may be any length up to this value.

If the total file image length will exceed 16k then you are informed and the last file entered is not accepted On completion, the ROM image may be saved to the current filing system, written directly into sideways RAM or left in memory

Using the Formatter

A brief description of the program can be found at the end of this chapter Once you have entered the program save it under the filename 'ROMFS' You can then go ahead and use it as described below

The RFS formatter is simple to use First ensure that you have all the programs that you wish to format to hand, preferably on the same disc (or in the current directory if running ADFS or ANFS)

On running the screen will clear and you will asked to enter the title of the ROM you wish to format This is the string that will be printed out in response *HELP After this you will be prompted for any to a copyright string You need not enter anything if you so wish, the obligatory '(C)' is entered by the program you will be requested to enter the name of first file Do this and press return The file will The formatting process then be read in and formatted take several moments for a longish program Once the file has been read in and formatted the amount of memory remaining in the ROM image will be displayed You will then be asked for the name of the next file If the file size exceeds that of the space remaining or the specified file cannot be found then an error will displayed and you will be asked for the filename once again

Once formatting is complete, simply press the return key when the next filename prompt is issued to complete

the construction of the ROM image You will then be asked if you wish to

- I) Quit
- 2) Save the ROM image
- 3) Write the image to sideways RAM

Simply press the appropriate key to select. In the case of I and 2 you will be asked to enter either a filename or the sideways RAM bank number respectively

Once in sideways RAM press CTRL-BREAK to initialise the ROM Typing *ROM and then *CAT should show that all is in order Files can then be loaded in as normal

Checking the Image

Of course it is possible that your ROM image will not work correctly first time round The two possible errors you could get are 'Bad Rom' and 'Data' The Bad ROM error message means that your header coding is not correct so recheck through lines 1360 to 2000 'Data' infers that the problem lies elsewhere in the program and will need to be checked thoroughly The following pages details the formation and checking of a standard' ROM image If you are having problems, work through what follows and try to locate where your problem lies

The first step is to enter and save a short test

program

IØREM demo listing 20REM for use with 3ØREM RFS format 4ØREM program

It is important that the program is entered exactly as shown, with no extra spaces The program should occupy just 67 bytes, so ensure that the memory marker TOP is &E43 Check this by typing

PRINT TOP

If this is not the case ensure that you have entered any extra spaces at the end of a line Once you are satisfied all is well save the program twice using the filenames 'DEMOI' and 'DEMO2'

Access to a hexadecimal and ASCII dump routine is vital If you have a suitable utility available in a sideways ROM then all is well In case you don't, program 13 2 is just such a routine Enter and test this then save it to disc as 'DUMPER' The next stage is to enter the formatter, and clear the buffer using

FOR N%=&3000 TO &4000 STEP 4 'N%=0 NEXT

This process is not normally required but it will enable us to see where the ROM image ends clearly The next step is to run the formatter and use DEMO and TEST (in uppercase) as the title and copyright strings enter DEMOI as the name of the first fıle formatted Once this has been read in the number of bytes remaining should be shown to be 16033 DEMO2 as the second file to be formatted After formatting the bytes remaining should be 15938 press return and select option I from the menu, ie Ouit

The next stage in the process is to load the DUMPER program Running this will produce a dump of the ROM image as shown in figure 13 I This should be examined closely byte by byte and the following description should help

The bytes from &3000 to &306D contain the ROM service call header as described earlier. The title and copyright strings can clearly be seen in the ASCII dump section on the right hand side of the listing

3ØØØ	ØØ	ØØ	ØØ	4C	17	8,0	82	ØD		L	
3ØØ8	ØØ	44	45	4 D	4 F	ØØ	28	43	DEMO (C		
3ØIØ	29	2ø	54	45	53	54	ØØ	C9) TE	ST
810K	Ø9	ГØ	3B	C9	ØD	DØ	ÎВ	48			H
3Ø2Ø	98	49	ØF	C5	F4	9Ø	11	Α9		I	
3Ø28	ØØ	85	F6	Α9	18	85	F7	Α5			
3Ø3Ø	F4	49	ØF	85	F5	4C	52	8,0		I	LR
3Ø38	68	6ø	C9	ØЕ	DØ	FΒ	48	A5	ł	1	Н
3Ø4Ø	F5	49	ØF	C 5	F4	DØ	ΓĪ	ΑØ		I	
3Ø48	ØØ	ΒĪ	F6	A 8	E6	F6	DØ	Ø2			
3Ø5Ø	E6				ØØ					h	
3Ø58	E7	FF	A 2	\mathbf{FF}	E8	BD	Ø9	8,0			
3Ø6Ø	ГØ	Ø5	2Ø	E3	FF	8ø	F5	20			
3Ø68		FF	FA	4C	52	8,0	ØØ	ØØ		L	
Figure	1 3	ì	Ηe	exac	lecı	ma l	. du	qmı	of	ROM	ımage

The bytes from 3070 to 30FF should all contain zero as these are not used

The line starting 3100 contains the synchronisation byte, &2A, followed by the ASCII filename and then the terminator byte, &00

3100 2A 44 45 4D 4F 31 00 00 *DEMOI

The next four bytes, the last one, &ØØ, in the above dumped line and the first three in the line beginning 31Ø8 hold the program load address. This is stored low byte first. It should show as being FFFFØEØØ. The next four bytes hold the exection address, again low byte first. This should be FFFF8Ø2B. The next two bytes (one in this line and one first in the next line) are the block number. Both are zero as this is block zero.

The line beginning 3II \emptyset contains the file length in the second and third bytes, 43 $\emptyset\emptyset$ in this case, low byte first. The next byte, 8 \emptyset , is the block byte, followed by four bytes holding the address of the byte after the end of the current file, which should be as shown

The first two bytes in the line beginning at 3II8 is the header CRC The test program is then stored in file form from 3IIA to 3I5C, with the last byte &FF being the program TOP The next two bytes at 3I5D and 3I5E contain the file data CRC

```
B8 AB ØD ØØ ØA 12 F4 2Ø
3118
      64 65 6D 6F 2Ø 6C 69 73
74 69 6E 67 ØD ØØ I4 I2
                                          demo lis
312Ø
3128
                                          ting
313Ø F4 2Ø 66 6F 72 2Ø 75 73
                                             for us
      65 2Ø 77 69 74 68 ØD ØØ
1E 1Ø F4 2Ø 52 46 53 2Ø
                                          e with
3138
                                               RFS
314Ø
       66 6F 72 6D 61 74 ØD ØØ
                                          format
3148
       28 ØD F4 2Ø 7Ø 72 6F 67
72 6Î 6D ØD FF 6C 5D 2A
                                               prog
315Ø
                                          ram 1]*
3T58
```

The last byte in the line above is the synchronisation byte for the second file DEMO2 This then follows the same format and is listed below

```
44 45 4D 4F 32 ØØ ØØ ØE
FF FF 2B 8Ø FF FF ØØ ØØ
                                      DEMO 2
316Ø
3168
      43 ØØ 8Ø BE 81 ØØ ØØ 38
                                              8
317Ø
      F5 ØD ØØ ØA 12 F4 2Ø 64
                                              d
3178
       65 6D 6F 2Ø 6C 69 73 74
                                      emo list
318Ø
       69 6E 67 ØD ØØ I4 I2 F4
                                      ınq
3188
       2Ø 66 6F 72 2Ø 75 73 65
2Ø 77 69 74 68 ØD ØØ ÎE
                                       for use
319Ø
                                       with
3198
       1Ø F4 2Ø 52 46 53 2Ø 66
                                         RFS f
3ÎAØ
       6F 72 6D 61 74 ØD ØØ 28
                                      ormat
                                              (
3TA8
       ØD F4 2Ø 7Ø 72 6F 67 72
                                         progr
3ÎBØ
     61 6D ØD FF 6C 5D 2B ØØ
                                      am 1]+
3ÎB8
```

The final byte in the ROM image is the end of ROM marker, &2B, located at &3ÎBE All bytes beyond this should be set to zero

If your ROM image is as shown then the program is operating correctly If it will not function as a ROM image then check that you are installing it into sideways RAM correctly Because of space, the hash headers are not checked, so if the formatter works for small programs, but not longer ones, then the error will almost certainly be in PROChash

The Procedures

The formatter includes eleven procedures which form the basis of the program The function of each is as follows

PROCformat This procedure first tests to see if there is more than one block in a file If this is the case then PROChandle is called On return from PROChandle only the last block remains to be formatted so this is undertaken by the call to PROCfilehead The last action of this procedure is to close the open reading channel

PROCfilehead Constructs a detailed block header for the first and last blocks of a file, including the calculation of the header CRCs

PROCgetdata As its name implies this procedure reads each byte of data from a file and pokes it into the correct position in the ROM image. It also provides the data CRC value

PROChash This procedure is called for all file blocks except the first and last It creates the abbreviated hash header for the intermediary files and also initialises each PROCgetdata call to fetch 256 bytes, in addition to keeping track of the block count

PROCassemble This simply assembles the machine code that calculates the CRC for both headers and data bytes

PROCromhead Assembles the ROM head details required by the MOS and also the service call polling as required These are assembled directly in the front of the ROM image

PROChandle This creates the first block image of a file and then controls the formatting of the intermediate blocks but not the very last block of a file

PROCnottape Reads the catalogue information of the specified file from a disc using OSFILE

PROCsave Simple saves the ROM image to the current filing medium

```
Listing 13 1 RFS Formatter Save as RFS
   10 REM ROM Filing System Formatter
   2Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø
   5Ø ON ERROR GOTO 279Ø
   6Ø
   7Ø MODE7
   8Ø @8=Ø
   9Ø DIM block% 2Ø, name% 2Ø, mcode% 25Ø
  IØØ size=&4ØØØ
                   flag%=Î
  110 remain%=16128
  12Ø buffer%=&3ØØØ marker%=&31ØØ
  13Ø PROCassemble
  140 PROCheading
  15Ø PROCdetails
  16Ø PROCromhead(buffer%)
  17Ø
  18Ø REPEAT
  19Ø PRINTTAB(Ø,5),SPC(38)
  2\emptyset\emptyset PRINTTAB(\emptyset,5),
  210 PRINT Enter file name 'CHR$(129)
  22Ø INPUT" '$name%
  23Ø IF $name%<> " THEN IF FNinfo THEN
PROCformat
   24Ø IF flag% remain%=size-(nextfile%-&
8ØØØ)
   25Ø flag%=1
   26Ø PRINT "Space remaining
   27Ø PRINTremain%," bytes
   28Ø UNTIL $name%=" '
   29Ø ?marker%=ASC("+")
   300 finish%=marker%+1
   31Ø PROCsave
   32Ø VDU 26
   33Ø CLS
   34Ø END
   35Ø
   36Ø DEF PROCformat
   37Ø LOCAL block%
   38Ø block%=Ø
   39Ø IF extent%>256 THEN PROChandle
   400 PROCfilehead(marker%, name%, load%, e
 xecution%, block%, &8Ø, extent%)
   4ÎØ CLOSE≠channel%
   42Ø ENDPROC
   43Ø
   44Ø DEF FNinfo
```

```
45Ø LOCAL L$
  46Ø A%=Ø Y%=Ø
  47Ø channel%=OPENUP($name%)
  48Ø PROCnottape
  490 nextfile%=&8000+marker%-buffer%+(L
EN(name%)+23)-(LEN(name%)+23)*(extent%)
>256)-3*(extent%>512)*(((extent%-1) DIV
256)-1)+extent%
  500 space%=(nextfile%<&8000+size-1)AND
 (channel%<>Ø)
  510 IF NOT space% THEN PROCerror
  52Ø =space%
  53Ø
  54Ø DEF PROCfilehead(position%, file%, l
address%, execaddr%, bcount%, flag%, length%
  55Ø LOCAL pos%
  56Ø ?position%=ASC("*")
  570 position%=position%+1
 58Ø $position%=$file%
  59Ø pos%=LEN($file%)+position%
 600 pos %=0
 610 pos%'I=laddress%
 62Ø pos%'5=execaddr%
 63Ø pos%'9=bcount%
64Ø pos%'II=length%
 650 pos%?13=flag%
 66Ø pos%'I4=nextfile%
 67Ø 7&84=pos%-position%+18
 68Ø '&8Ø=position%
 69Ø CALL docre
 700 pos% 18=1&82
710 marker%=pos%+20
 72Ø PROCgetdata(length%)
 73Ø block%=block%+1
 74Ø ENDPROC
 75Ø
 76Ø DEF PROCgetdata(length%)
 77Ø LOCAL pos%
 78Ø FOR pos%=Ø TO length%-I
 79∅ marker%pos%=BGET≠channel%
 800 NEXTpos%
 81Ø 1&8Ø=marker%
 82Ø ?&84=length%
 83Ø CALL docrc
 840 marker%'length%='&82
 85Ø extent%-length%
 86Ø marker%=marker%+length%+2
```

Listing I3 I continued

```
87Ø ENDPROC
 88Ø
 890 DEF PROChash
 9ØØ ?marker%=ASC("≠")
 910 marker%=marker%+1
 92Ø PROCgetdata(&1ØØ)
 93Ø block%=block%+I
 94Ø ENDPROC
 95Ø
 96Ø DEF PROCassemble
 97Ø address=&8Ø
 98Ø crc1=&82
 99Ø crc2=&83
1000 FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2
1010 P%=mcode%
IØ2Ø [OPT pass
IØ3Ø
     docrc
1Ø4Ø LDA ≠Ø
IØ5Ø STA crcI
IØ6Ø STA crc2
1070 TAY
IØ8ØI
     next
1090 LDA crc1
IIØØ EOR (address),Y
IIIØ STA crcI
II2Ø LDX ≠8
II3Ø
     agaın
II4Ø LDA crcI
115Ø ROL A
II6Ø BCC over
II7Ø LDA crcI
II8Ø EOR ≠8
119Ø STA crc1
1200 LDA crc2
121Ø EOR ≠&1Ø
1220 STA crc2
123Ø
     over
124Ø ROL crc2
1250 ROL crc1
126Ø DEX
127Ø BNE again
128Ø INY
129Ø CPY crc2+I
1300 BNE next
1310 RTS
132Ø ]
1330 NEXT pass
```

134Ø ENDPROC

Listing I3 I continued

135Ø 1360 DEF PROCromhead (header%) 137Ø FOR pass=4 TO 6 STEP 2 138Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=header% 1390 [OPT pass 1400 EQUW Ø 141Ø EQUB Ø 1420 JMP entry 143Ø EQUB &82 1440 EOUB offset MOD 256 145Ø EQUB Ø 146Ø title I47Ø EQUS title\$ 1480 offset 149Ø EQUB Ø 1500 EQUS "(C) "+copy\$ ISIØ EQUB Ø **1**52Ø entry 153Ø CMP ≠9 1540 BEQ help 155Ø CMP ≠13 156Ø BNE tryagain I57Ø PHA 158Ø TYA 159Ø EOR ≠15 1600 CMP &F4 I6IØ BCC return 162Ø LDA ≠Ø 163Ø STA &F6 164Ø LDA ≠&81 165Ø STA &F7 166Ø LDA &F4 167Ø EOR ≠15 168Ø STA &F5 169Ø JMP restore 17ØØ return 1710 PLA 172Ø back 173Ø RTS 174Ø tryagaın 175Ø CMP ≠&ØE 176Ø BNE back 177Ø PHA 178Ø LDA &F5 179Ø EOR ≠15 1800 CMP &F4 1810 BNE return Î82Ø LDY ≠Ø

226Ø

228Ø CLS

227Ø DEF PROCsave

```
Listing I3 I continued
 183Ø LDA (&F6),Y
 184Ø TAY
 185Ø INC &F6
 1860 BNE restore
 187Ø INC &F7
 188Ø
       restore
 189Ø PLA
 Î9ØØ LDA ≠Ø
 1910 RTS
 I92Ø \
      help
 193Ø
 194Ø PHX
 195Ø JSR &FFE7
 196Ø LDX ≠255
 197Ø
      helploop
 198Ø INX
 1990 LDA title,X
 2000 BEQ alldone
 2010 JSR &FFE3
 2020 BRA helploop
 2Ø3Ø
      alldone
 2040 JSR &FFE7
 2Ø5Ø PLX
 2060 JMP restore
 2Ø7Ø ]
 2Ø8Ø NEXT
 2Ø9Ø ENDPROC
 2ÎØØ
 2110 DEF PROChandle
 212Ø PROCfilehead(marker%, name%, load%, e
xecution%, block%, Ø, & IØØ)
 213Ø IF extent%>256 THEN REPEAT PROChas
h UNTIL extent%<=256
 214Ø ENDPROC
 215Ø
 216Ø DEF PROCnottape
 2170 | block%=name%
 218Ø A%=5 X%=block% MOD 256
 219Ø Y%=block% DIV 256
 22ØØ CALL &FFDD
 2210 load%=block%!2
 222Ø execution%=block%'6
 2230 extent%=block%'I0
 224Ø flen%=extent%
 225Ø ENDPROC
```

```
Listing I3 I continued
 229Ø PRINT'Please select "
 2300 PRINT' 1) Ouit"
 2310 PRINT" 2) Save Formatted File"
 2320 PRINT" 3) Write Formatted File
 233Ø key%=GET
 234Ø IF key%=ASC("1") THEN ENDPROC
 235Ø IF key%=ASC( 3") THEN GOTO 242Ø
 236Ø PRINT''
 237Ø INPUT 'Enter filename
                              title$
 238Ø save$="SAVE "+title$+' 3ØØØ +4ØØØ
 239Ø OSCLI (save$)
 2400 ENDPROC
 24IØ
 242Ø PRINT''
 243Ø INPUT "Enter RAM bank (4,5,6,7)
 rb$
 244Ø OSCLI ("SRWRITE 3ØØØ +4ØØØ 8ØØØ +
 245Ø PRINT'"Press CTRL-BREAK to initali
sen
 246Ø END
 247Ø
 248Ø DEF PROCheading
 249Ø FOR N%=1 TO 2
 2500 PRINTCHR$(130) CHR$(141) SPC(9),
 251Ø PRINT"RFS Formatter"
 252Ø NEXT N%
 253Ø PRINT'CHR$(129),SPC(6),
 254Ø PRINT "(C) Bruce Smith 1986'
 255Ø PRINT TAB(Ø,24),CHR$([31]) SPC(7)
 2560 PRINT "Press RETURN to end',
 257Ø PRINT TAB(\emptyset,5),
 258Ø VDU 28,Ø,23,39,5
 259Ø ENDPROC
 26ØØ
 2610 DEF PROCdetails
 262Ø INPUT "Enter ROM title
                              title$
263Ø INPUT "Enter Copyright
                               "copy$
 264Ø ENDPROC
 265Ø
 266Ø DEF PROCerror
 267Ø PRINTTAB(Ø,8), ERROR"
268Ø VDU 7
269Ø PRINT File not found / File to big
27ØØ CLOSE≠channel%
                       flag%=Ø
2710 PRINT' 'Press any key to continue",
```

272Ø REPEAT UNTIL GET

PRINTCHR\$(A%), 17Ø NEXT 18Ø PRINT 19Ø NEXT

```
Listing I3 I continued
 273Ø PRINTTAB(\emptyset,8),SPC(3\emptyset)
 274Ø PRINTSPC(3Ø)'SPC(3Ø)'SPC(3Ø)
 275Ø PRINTTAB(Ø,6)
 276Ø ENDPROC
 277Ø
 278Ø ***** ERROR HANDLER ******
 279Ø CLOSE ≠Ø
 28ØØ VDU 26,7
 281Ø CLS
 282Ø REPORT
 283Ø PRINT" ERROR at line ", ERL
 284Ø END
Listing I3 2 Hex and ASCII dump utility Save as
DUMPER
   IØ REM Hex & ASCII Dump
   20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
   3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
   4Ø
   5Ø MODE 7
   6Ø 8=Ø
   7Ø FOR P%=&3ØØØ TO &3ÎFF STEP8
   8Ø PRINT~P% " '
   9Ø FOR N%=Ø TO 7
  IØØ IF P%?N%<I6 PRINT'Ø"
  IIØ PRINT ~P%?N% "
  12Ø NEXT
  13Ø PRINT'
  14Ø FOR N%=Ø TO 7
  15Ø A%=P%?N%
```

16Ø IF A%<32 OR A%>127 PRINT" ', ELSE

Chapter Fourteen Language ROMs

The first three bytes of a paged ROM are referred to as its language entry point, the first byte will normally contain the JMP opcode, &4C, followed by the two-byte address of the beginning of the language coding If it is a service ROM, these three bytes should be set to zero

The normal way in which a language is entered is to type in a command that the ROM will recognise For this purpose all language ROMs must contain a service entry point to an interpreter that will attempt to recognise the command, for example, the command *FORTH might select a FORTH service entry interpreter must be capable of recognising this command and then select itself as the new language ROM To do this the ROM must ıssue Х register containing the ROM number important to remember that this OSBYTE call returns through the ROM's language entry point, so there is no preserve registers as they are destroyed anyway! The coding to perform the language entry is

LDA ≠&8E JSR &FFF4

The X register should already hold the ROM identity though this can always be extracted from &F4 if it is lost for some reason

To start up the selected language the MOS notes the number of the ROM so that it can reselect the language ROM when a 'soft break' is performed, and then displays the ROM title string to indicate the particular language is in use The error message vector is pointed towards the copyright message or version string if it is present, whereupon the

language point is entered with the accumulator containing

the value I to indicate a normal start up

Once a language has been initialised it has I\$24 bytes of workspace free for private use running in a single block from &4\$\mathbb{\text{0}}\$ to &8\$\mathbb{\text{0}}\$ in addition to the zero page locations normally associated with a language ROM between &\$\mathbb{\text{0}}\$ to &8\$F The language program space exists between the Operating System High Water Mark (OSHWM) and the bottom of the currently selected screen mode

Language ROMs may also be entered by two other methods First by issuing an *FXI42 call This call must be postfixed by a number which relates to the ROM socket number containing the language to be switched in Thus to

select the language in ROM socket number 12, use

*FX 142,12

A language may also be auto-booted by pressing the BREAK key in combination with another specific key To do this the service interpreter must trap the auto-boot service call, 3, issued by the MOS on BREAK, and test for its particular auto-boot key (This technique is explained in Chapter IØ)

Absolute Musts

There are three things a language must do, otherwise it will cause the Master to 'hang up' First, interrupt requests must be enabled for the MOS to continue to work correctly, a simple CLI will perform this Second, the BRK vector, BRKV at &202, must also be set ready to handle errors as they occur All language ROMs must include error handling facilities, as even the simplest task such as an OSWRCH call can generate an error The technique of error handling is examined in chapter 15 Finally the stack pointer will be undefined so this should be re-initialised These three tasks require a minimum of code

```
CLI \ enable IRQs
LDX \neq &FF \ reset stack pointer

TXS
LDA \neq brkhandle MOD 256 \ get low byte error handing \ entry

STA &2\textit{\textit{0}}2 \ store low-byte BRKV
LDA \neq brkhandle DIV 256 \ get high byte of same

STA &2\textit{\textit{0}}3 \ and poke into BRKV high byte
```

On entering a language, the accumulator will contain a language entry code Normally these can be ignored though two will be of interest if the language ROM is to be

compatible with the Electron The four entry codes are as follows

Accumulator=Ø There is no language present and the Tube ROM is being called This call must not be intercepted other than by the Tube ROM itself

Accumulator=I Normal entry to language

Accumulator=2 Request next byte of soft key expansion. The key number is set using a call with the accumulator containing 3, and the byte result is in the Y register. This entry call is applicable on the Electron only.

Accumulator=3 Requesting length of soft key expansion
The key number is held in the Y register and the length
should be substituted for it Again, an Electron-only call
Language entry calls 2 and 3 are Electron-specific and

should not be looked at by Master or BBC-only firmware

Languages and the Tube

Because of the popularity of BBC model B second processors and Master coprocessors it is essential that languages will run across the Tube This simply means that they are capable of relocating in the second processor and running correctly. If you write your languages 'correctly' this is automatic But what is correctly? Well, it simply means that all the input/ouput processes should be performed using the MOS commands and memory should not be peeked and poked. Thus the screen should be written to using OSWRCH and not by poking the ASCII character of a code there directly. For example, the letter A should be printed at the current cursor position using

LDA ≠ASC("A) JSR oswrch

and not by using poking such as

LDA ≠ASC("A")
STA screen+offset

To take advantage of the increased memory capacity offered by the second processor, a 'Hi' version of the language you are writing may be required. This option is available simply by assembling your language coding so that it will run at a higher re-location address, &B800 for example as with Hi-BASIC. The service entry point and its associated coding should remain assembled at the normal addresses as this is not copied across in the second processor by the Tube ROM and is required to function within the Master Such a Hi version of your language would not run in the normal Master however due to the change in absolute

addresses Changing the addressing is done simply by resetting the value assigned to P% at the language entry, as defined by the address given at the language entry point For example

```
FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
         REM assemble at &5ØØØ
O%=&5ØØØ
           REM service code at &8000
[OPT pass
JMP language
JMP service
\ rest of service code is here
    REM exit at end of service code
P%=&B8ØØ
           REM repoint P%
[OPT pass
 language
∖ language code here
\ assembled for &B800
1
NEXT pass
```

Listing 14 1 provides a very simple but working example of a language ROM. The listing forms the machine code for a language that will give a hex and ASCII dump. The language is called by *MASMON

When MASMON is entered, the screen clears and the title and copyright strings are displayed A text window ıs set ensures that these items remain on-screen which throughout the languages operation You are then prompted to enter a start and end address in hexadecimal format note that the '&' is already provided so you need only hex digits themselves Once this has occurred, the area of memory between these two addresses is dumped to The format for each line is current address, he screen followed by the eight bytes from this address displayed in hex, and then in ASCII form (figure I4 I) If the byte is not displayable ASCII, a full stop is shown instead The listing may be halted by the CTRL-SHIFT key combination in the usual manner

When the listing has completed, you will be asked if you wish to display a further area of memory Pressing Y will reset the language and the process will repeat, otherwise BASIC will be re-entered

Having said that redirecting the BRK vector into your own language ROM is an absolute must, listing 14 I does not do that! The reason for my madness will be looked at in the chapter 15 where errors will be discussed As it stands, the language is not capable of creating an error - although pressing the ESCAPE key will lock the language up The

Master Monitor

```
29
74
          6B
              80
                  4C
                                   18
8000 4C
                          80
                                        Lk L)
                  73
          4D
              61
                           65
                                   20
8008
      01
                                          Master
      4D
          6F
              6E
                  69
                       74
                           6F
                                   00
8010
                                        Monitor
                  29
53
              43
          28
                       20
                                          (C) Bru
8018
      00
              20
          65
8020
      63
                      6D
                                   68
                                        ce Smith
              C9
8028
          48
                  09
                      FO
                          06
                               C9
                                   04
                                         Н
      00
              68
                               Ē8
8030
      FO
          12
                  60
                      82
                          FF
                                   BD
                                           h£
                      FF
                          D0
8038
      09
          80
              20
                  E3
                                   20
                          5A
      E7
                  60
                      DA
                               A2
8040
          FF
              68
                                   FF
                                           ħ£
8048
      88
          E8
              C8
                  B1
                      F2
                           29
                               DF
                                   DD
8050
      64
          80
              FO
                  F5
                          64
                               80
                                   30
                      BD
                                               ď
                                                  0
      04
              FA
                  68
8058
          7A
                      60
                          A9
                               8E
                                   A6
      F4
          20
              F4
                  FF
                               53
8060
                      4D
                          41
                                   4 D
              FF
                          FF
                               9 A
      4F
          4E
                  58
                      A2
                                   A9
8068
                               20
8070
      16
          20
              EE
                  FF
                      R9
                          07
                                   EE
8078
      FF
          AO
              02
                  A2
                      FF
                          E8
                               BD
                      E3
8080
      81
          F0
              05
                  20
                          FF
                               80
                                  F5
          FF
8088
      A2
              88
                  DO
                      FO
                          E8
                               BD
                                   DF
```

Go again (Y/N)?

Figure 14 1 Screen dump of MASMON display

reasons why this happens are discussed in the next chapter on errors

Now for a listing description PROCvars sets up the variables required by the language to operate, namely operating system calls and zero page storage for vectored addresses

The ROM header is assembled It 18 ın lines 27Ø to 9ØØ much the same as for service ROMs, but there are som/> differences Α language entry Jump address must be assembled into the first three ROM header bytes (line 270) the ROM type value must also be amended to include the now set language bit, bit 6, therefore the byte to be assembled is IIØØ ØØIØ, or &C2 hex Line 290 takes care of this service entry point, and therefore interpreter, must also to handle any be included *HELP requests service unrecognised command requests This is assembled by lines 400 to 790 The unrecognised command we are trying to trap is MASMON This is assembled in lines 880 to 990 and looked for by the interpreter assembled at lines 600 to 730 Once the language is entered through the language recognised entry point by executing OSBYTE &8E (lines 810 to 840)

entered The language entry point is vıa the instruction located at &8000, which is in effect a jump to line 920 First things first, the MOS must be reset by re-enabling interrupts with CLI, followed closely by resetting of the stack (lines 930 to 950) To see how important these processes are, try omiting these lines and running the re-assembled code!

The screen set-up routine and hex/ASCII dump output is controlled in a standard manner by lines 960 to 2160, using machine code subroutines based at lines 2290 to 3100 BASIC is re-entered by locating its ROM socket number via

OSBYTE &BB OSBYTE &8E is used to select it in the standard way (lines 2210 to 2250)

Service Call 42 (&2A)

The MOS issues service call 42 (&2A) before a ROM-based language starts up This gives other languages including the current one, plus service ROMs, the chance to do any necessary house-keeping

Listing ${\bf 14}$ ${\bf 1}$ Master machine code hex and ASCII dump Save as MASMON

```
10 REM Implement a language ROM
 20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 4 Ø
 5Ø PROCvars
 6Ø PROCassemble
 7Ø PROCchecksum
 8Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +3ØØ 8ØØØ 7
 9Ø END
IØØ DEF PROCvars
110 mshigh=&50 mslow=&51
12Ø lshigh=&52 lslow=&53
13Ø temp=&54
140 hibyte=&63 lobyte=&62
150 hibegin=&61 lobegin=&60
160 osrdch=&FFE0 osbyte=&FFF4
170 oswrch=&FFEE osnewl=&FFE7
18Ø osasci=&FFE3
19Ø comline=&F2
200 ENDPROC
21Ø
22Ø DEF PROCassemble
23Ø FOR Pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
24Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ
25Ø [
26Ø OPT Pass
27Ø JMP language
28Ø JMP service
29Ø EQUB &C2
300 EQUB offset MOD 256
31Ø EQUB 1
32Ø title
33Ø EQUS "Master Monitor"
34Ø EQUB Ø
35Ø
    offset
36Ø EQUB Ø
37Ø EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith
38Ø EQUB Ø
39Ø
400 service
41Ø PHA
42Ø CMP ≠9
43Ø BEQ help
44Ø CMP ≠4
45Ø BEQ unrecognised
46Ø PLA
47Ø RTS
```

```
48Ø
49Ø
      help
5ØØ LDX ≠&FF
5ÎØ
    helploop
52Ø INX
53Ø LDA title,X
540 JSR osasci
550 BNE helploop
56Ø JSR osnewl
57Ø PLA
58Ø RTS
59Ø
6ØØ
     unrecognised
61Ø PHX
62Ø PHY
63Ø LDX ≠&FF
64Ø DEY
65Ø
    ctloop
66Ø INX
67Ø INY
68Ø LDA (comline),Y
69Ø AND ≠&DF
700 CMP table,X
710 BEQ ctloop
72Ø LDA table,X
73Ø BMI found
74Ø \
75Ø
      nothisrom
76Ø PLY
77Ø PLX
78Ø PLA
79Ø RTS
8ØØ \
81ø
      found
82Ø LDA ≠&8E
83Ø LDX &F4
84Ø JSR &FFF4
85Ø \ No return'
86Ø \
87∅ \ set up Command Table
88Ø
     table
89Ø EQUS
            MASMON"
9ØØ EQUB &FF
Q10
92Ø
      language
```

93Ø CLI 94Ø LDX ≠&FF 95Ø TXS

```
96Ø LDA ≠22
 97Ø JSR oswrch
 98Ø LDA ≠7
 99Ø JSR oswrch
IØØØ LDY ≠2
IØIØ LDX ≠&FF
IØ2Ø
     langloop
IØ3Ø INX
IØ4Ø LDA heading,X
1050 BEQ out
İØ6Ø JSR osascı
IØ7Ø BRA langloop
1Ø8Ø
     out
IØ9Ø \
IIØØ LDX ≠&FF
IIIØ DEY
ff2Ø BNE langloop
II3Ø \
II4Ø copyloop
IISØ INX
1160 LDA copyright,X
ÎÎ7Ø BEQ out2
ÎÎ8Ø JSR osascı
119Ø BRA copyloop
12ØØ \
I2IØ out2
122Ø LDA ≠28
123Ø JSR oswrch
Î24Ø LDA ≠Ø
125Ø JSR oswrch
126Ø LDA #24
127Ø JSR oswrch
128Ø LDA ≠39
129Ø JSR oswrch
13ØØ LDA ≠5
1310 JSR oswrch
132Ø LDX ≠&FF
133Ø \
I34Ø
     stloop
135Ø INX
1360 LDA start,X
137Ø JSR osascı
1380 BNE stloop
139Ø JSR inputaddr
1400 LDA hibyte
141Ø STA hibegin
142Ø LDA lobyte
```

1430 STA lobegin

Listing I4 I continued I44Ø \ Î45Ø LDX ≠&FF 146Ø endloop 147Ø INX 1480 LDA end,X 149Ø JSR osascı 1500 BNE endloop ISIØ JSR inputaddr 152Ø LDA ≠13 153Ø JSR osascı 154Ø \ 155Ø nextline 156Ø JSR address 157Ø LDY ≠Ø 158Ø LDX ≠7 **1**59Ø hexloop 1600 LDA (lobegin),Y **1610** JSR hexout 162Ø JSR space 163Ø INY 164Ø DEX 165Ø BPL hexloop 166Ø LDA ≠134 167Ø JSR oswrch 168Ø \ 169Ø LDY ≠Ø Î7ØØ LDX ≠7 171Ø ascloop 1720 LDA (lobegin),Y 173Ø CMP ≠32 1740 BCC spot 175Ø CMP ≠128 176Ø BCC jumpover 177Ø \ 178Ø spot 179Ø LDA #ASC(" ") 18øø Jumpover 1810 JSR oswrch 182Ø INY 183Ø DEX 1840 BPL ascloop 185Ø \ 186Ø LDA ≠&ØD **187Ø** JSR osascı

188Ø CLC

189Ø LDA lobegin 1900 ADC ≠8 1910 STA lobegin

```
1920 BCC nocarry
1930 INC hibegin
1940 nocarry
1950 LDA lobegin
196Ø CMP lobyte
1970 BCC nextline
1980 LDA hibegin
1990 CMP hibyte
2000 BCC nextline
2ØIØ \
2020 JSR osnewl
2Ø3Ø LDX ≠&FF
2Ø4Ø
     goonloop
2Ø5Ø INX
2060 LDA continue,X
2070 JSR oswrch
2080 BNE goonloop
2Ø9Ø testkey
2100 JSR osrdch
2IIØ CMP ≠ASC("Y")
2I2Ø BNE skipover
2130 JMP language
214Ø
     skipover
215Ø CMP ≠ASC("N")
216Ø BNE testkey
217Ø \
218Ø LDA ≠26
219Ø JSR oswrch
22ØØ LDA ≠12
221Ø JSR oswrch
222Ø LDA ≠&BB
223Ø JSR osbyte
224Ø LDA ≠&8E
225Ø JMP osbyte
226Ø
227Ø \ machine code subroutines
228Ø
229Ø
     ınputaddr
2300 JSR characters
2310 LDA mshigh
232Ø JSR check
233Ø ASL A
234Ø ASL A
235Ø ASL A
236Ø ASL A
237Ø STA temp
2380 LDA mslow
```

239Ø JSR check

```
2400 ORA temp
2410 STA hibyte
242Ø LDA lshigh
243Ø JSR check
244Ø ASL A
 245Ø ASL A
 246Ø ASL A
 247Ø ASL A
 248Ø STA temp
 249Ø LDA lslow
 2500 JSR check
 251Ø ORA temp
 252Ø STA lobyte
 253Ø RTS
 254Ø \
      characters
<u>2</u>55ø
    Ø JSR osrdch
    Ø JSR osascı
  80 STA mshigh
 259Ø JSR osrdch
 2600 STA mslow
 2610 JSR osascı
 262Ø JSR osrdch
 263Ø JSR osascı
 264Ø STA lshigh
 265Ø JSR osrdch
 266Ø JSR osascı
 267Ø STA Islow
 268Ø RTS
 269Ø \
 27ØØ
       check
 271Ø CMP ≠58
 272Ø BCS atof
 273Ø AND ≠15
 274Ø RTS
 275Ø
       atof
 276Ø SBC ≠55
 277Ø RTS
 278Ø \
 279Ø
      space
 28ØØ LDA ≠32
 281Ø JMP oswrch
 282Ø \
 283Ø
      address
 284Ø LDA ≠129
```

285Ø JSR oswrch 286Ø LDX ≠lobegin 287Ø LDA Î,X

```
288Ø JSR hexout
 289Ø LDA Ø,X
 29ØØ JSR hexout
29ÎØ LDA ≠Î3Ø
 292Ø JSR oswrch
 293Ø RTS
 294Ø \
 295Ø
      hexout
 296Ø PHA
297Ø LSR A
 298Ø LSR A
299Ø LSR A
3ØØØ LSR A
3ØIØ JSR digit
3Ø2Ø PLA
3Ø3Ø
       digit
3Ø4Ø AND ≠15
3Ø5Ø CMP ≠1Ø
3Ø6Ø BCC no
3Ø7Ø ADC ≠6
3Ø8Ø
      no
3Ø9Ø ADC ≠48
3100 JMP oswrch
3IIØ
312Ø \ ASCII string storage area
3T3Ø
314Ø copyright
315Ø EQUD &2Ø2Ø2Ø86
316Ø EQUW &2Ø2Ø
317% EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith 1986"
318Ø EQUB 13
319Ø EQUB Ø
3200 heading
321Ø EQUB 141
322Ø EQUB 131
323Ø EQUD &2Ø2Ø2Ø2Ø
324Ø EQUD &2Ø2Ø2Ø2Ø
325Ø EQUS Master Monitor
326Ø EQUB 13
327Ø EQUB Ø
328Ø EQUB 141
329Ø
     start
33ØØ EQUB 13Ø
331Ø EQUS "Start &"
332Ø EQUB 129
333Ø EQUB Ø
334Ø end
335Ø EQUB 13Ø
```

336Ø EQUS " End &"
337Ø EQUB 129
338Ø EQUB Ø
339Ø continue
34ØØ EQUB 13Ø
34IØ EQUS "Go again (Y/N)?"

3410 EQUS "Go again (Y/N)? "
3420 EQUB 0

343Ø] 344Ø NEXT

345Ø ENDPROC 346Ø

347Ø DEF PROCchecksum 348Ø N%=Ø

490 FOR X%=&5000 TO &5240 00 N%=N%+7X%

Ø NEXT Ø IF N%=7Ø332 THEN ENDPROC

3 VDU 7
40 PRINT"Assembler error!"
3550 STOP

Chapter 15 Errors

When writing any sideways ROM format program that need input from the user, other than just entering command name, the ROM code must be capable of identifying what is acceptable and what is not. In the latter case it must signal the fact to the user in the way of an error message.

For example, consider the two-line program

IØ MODE 2 20 MOVE

When BASIC interprets this program it expects to find a number after the MODE command. It looks to find one that is acceptable so performs a mode 2 command. It moves onto the next line and identifies the MOVE command which it expects to be followed by two numbers, variables or expressions for evaluation. In this case it finds none, just a carriage return. Obviously this is not acceptable, so it signals the error message.

No such variable at line 20

The BRK command is used on the Master to print error messages When the MOS sees a BRK it tries to print the string following on the screen until it encounters another BRK Listing I5 I shows how the technique works Enter and run the program

Lines 50 and 60 simply signal an error with a

Lines 50 and 60 simply signal an error with a customary beep Line 70 assembles the first BRK Line 80 assembles the error number that you are assigning to the error line 90 assembles the error message and

179

finally line 100 the final BRK instruction In fact we're not so much interested in BRK as its opcode, 800, so EQUB 0 is equally as effective as BRK for that purpose Figure 15 1 shows how the error message is stored in memory

Address		Contents	Description
& 3ØØØ		&A9	LDA≠
£3ØØI		&Ø7	7
& 3ØØ2		& 2,Ø	JSR
&3ØØ3		&EE	&FFEE
& 3ØØ4		&FF	
& 3ØØ5		&øø	BRK
& 3ØØ6		& 2,Ø	Error code
& 3ØØ7		&54	ASC"T
& 3ØØ8		&68	ASC"h
& 3ØØ9		&69	ASC'1"
& 3ØØA		&73	ASC's'
& 3ØØB		& 2Ø	ASC" '
& 3ØØC		&69	ASC"ı
& 3ØØD		&73	ASC's"
& 3ØØE		& 2Ø	ASC"
&3ØØF		&6 I	ASC"a
&3Ø1Ø		&6E	ASC"n
£3Ø11		& 2,Ø	ASC''
&3Ø12		&65	ASC e"
£10£3		&72	ASC"r"
&3014		&72	ASC"r'
&3Ø15	**	&6F	ASC 'o
&3Ø16		&72	ASC'r
&3Ø17		& Ø Ø	BRK

Figure 15 1 Error message storage

When the Master executes a BRK instruction the following events take place The address of the BRK instruction plus 2 is pushed onto the hardware stack, high byte first. The status register is pushed onto the stack. Interrupts are disabled and the BRK flag is set, ie bit 4 of the status register Execution continues from the address found at &FFFE and &FFFF (In Master 3 20 MOS this is &E59E)

Once here, the following action takes place First the accumulator is saved in location &FC. The stack is then pulled into the accumulator - this will be the status register. It is then pushed back to leave a copy in the accumulator. This is then ANDED with &IB to isolate bit four. If the result is not zero, then a BRK has occurred - otherwise it was an IRQ and an

appropriate jump to IRQTV is made. The previously pushed address is removed from the stack, has one subtracted from it and stored in locations &FD and &FE. This address now points to the error number, stored directly before the error message. Location &F4 is read to get the currently active ROM and this is copied into &24A. Service call 6 is then issued to each of the ROMs present. On return the currently active language ROM is re-enabled, interrupts are re-enabled and a jump to BRKV is performed.

Service ROM Errors

Errors within service ROMs are easy to process, however we must bear in mind that the currently active language ROM at this time (BASIC say) would be responsible for handling this error and as such would not expect the find it within another paged ROM. So what the service ROM must do is to copy the error details down into area of RAM that the language ROM can access The area of memory reserved for this is in fact the error message buffer located at the very bottom of the hardware stack, &IDD upwards This is easy to do

```
LDY ≠Ø
                \ BRK opcode
STY & IØØ
                \ put it at &1ØØ
 errorloop
LDA message, Y
                \ get character
STA &1Ø1.Y
                \ save it on stack
BEQ ifdone
                \ exit if Ø
INY
                \ increment index
BRA errorloop
                \ do next byte
 1fdone
JMP &1ØØ
                \ execute BRK
 message
                \ error number
EQUS "Error"
                \ error message
EQUB Ø
                \ terminating BRK
```

Listing 15 2 sets up a service ROM with a single command, *CONVERT This will convert the hexadecimal value following it into binary and store the result in zero page locations &70 and &71. Two error conditions can occur here First, the number may not be a legitimate hex value - this is signalled with the 'Bad hex' error message Second, only numbers in the range 0 to &FFFF are allowed and so numbers bigger than this must be signalled and rejected with a 'Too big' error Enter the program and save as 'ERRORI' Try the program yourself, the hex number should not be prefixed with &

181

```
*CONVERT - gives no error

*CONVERT DS - gives 'Bad hex' error

*CONVERT FFFFFF - gives 'too big' error

*CONVERT EF - is legitimate
```

If you use this command from within a BASIC program you will notice that BASIC will add 'at line xx' onto the end of the error message This shows that BASIC is extending your error message to make it more explicit and is an example of the sort of responsibility language ROMs can take

Language ROMs

As already mentioned, it is the responsibility of the current language ROM to handle any errors that occur ithin it. This is normally done by pointing BRKV at 202 and \$203 to the appropriate handling routine.

What a language ROM does when it receives an error is p to you As a rule however, it should print out the error message after a BRK so the user at least has some idea as to what is wrong and second to re-initialise the stack pointer

As we have seen, the vector at &FD is set by the MOS to point to the data immediately after the BRK that caused the error, so printing the error message is straightforward

```
error
                  \ initialise index
LDY ≠Ø
                \ get error number
\ and save where appropriate
LDA (&FD),Y
STA errno
 1000
                  \ increment Y
INY
                 \ get character
LDA (&FD),Y
                \ brancu
\ print it
an next b
                  \ branch if done
BEQ ifdone
JSR &FFEE
                 \ do next byte
BRA loop
 ıfdone
```

The stack pointer should be initialised as follows

```
LDX ≠255
TSX
```

Listing 15 3 produces a language ROM that expects an error! Basically anything other than a RETURN or an "*" is an error, with a suitable message printed out. If you type in an asterisk, the language, suitably called

ErrorWise, will expect you to enter a star command, such as *HELP and will pass it to the command line interpreter Save the program as 'ERROR2' and enter the language with *ERRORWISE

ESCAPE

When you write any sort of ROM software you must look to see if the ESCAPE key is pressed. This is even more important if you are looking at the keyboard for data. If you don't then your ROM will lock up, crash if you prefer. All escapes must be acknowledged with an OSBYTE 126

LDA ≠126 JSR &FFF4

There are two ways in which the ESCAPE key can be tested The best way is to use OSRDCH at &FFEØ to rethe keyboard If ESCAPE is pressed then the carry flawill be set on return so that

BCS escape

as in line $I\emptyset2\emptyset$ of listing I5 3 is acceptable Less acceptable is to look at location &FF If bit 7 is set then ESCAPE has been pressed

BIT &FF BMI escape

Error Numbers

If writing a language ROM, you can choose and use your own error numbers Service ROMs should be more discrete however and use numbers not used by the MegaROM, le Basic, DFS and ADFS These can be found in the Advanced Reference Guide published by Acorn

Errors 183

Listing IS I Shows how error codes and messages are stored in ROMs IØ REM BRK error demo 2Ø 3Ø P%=&3ØØØ 4Ø [5Ø LDA ≠7 6Ø JSR &FFEE 7Ø BRK 8Ø EQUB 32 9Ø EQUS "This is an error" IØØ BRK IIØ] 12Ø CALL &3ØØØ sting 15 2 Printing error messages from within a rvice ROM 10 REM Error Test ROM 2Ø REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986 3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide 40 5Ø lo=&7Ø h1=&7Î 6Ø PROCassemble 7Ø PROCchecksum 8Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 7 9Ø END IØØ IIØ DEF PROCassemble 12Ø osnewl=&FFE7 13Ø FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3 14Ø P%=&8ØØØ O%=&5ØØØ 15Ø [160 OPT pass 17Ø EQUB Ø 18Ø EQUW Ø 19Ø JMP service 2ØØ EQUB &82 210 EQUB offset MOD 256 22Ø EQUB I 23Ø title 24Ø EQUS "Error Test ROM" 25Ø EQUB Ø 26Ø version 27Ø EQUS " Î ØØ' 28Ø EQUB Ø 29Ø offset 3ØØ EQUB Ø

ASR-M

Listing 15 2 continued

```
310 EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
32Ø EQUB Ø
33Ø service
34Ø CMP ≠9
35Ø BEQ help
36Ø CMP ≠4
37Ø BEQ unrecognised
38Ø RTS
39Ø \
400 help
410 JSR osnewl
42Ø LDX ≠&FF
43Ø JSR helploop
44Ø JSR helploop
45Ø JSR osnewl
46Ø RTS
47Ø \
48Ø
    helploop
49Ø INX
500 LDA title,X
510 BEQ finish
52Ø JSR &FFE3
53Ø BRA helploop
540 finish
55Ø RTS
56Ø
57Ø exit
58Ø PLY
59Ø PLX
600 PLA
61Ø RTS
62Ø \
63Ø complete
64Ø PLY
65Ø PLX
66Ø PLA
67Ø LDA ≠Ø
68Ø RTS
69Ø \
7ØØ convert
71Ø EQUS 'CONVERT"
72Ø \
73Ø unrecognised
74Ø PHA
75Ø PHX
76Ø PHY
77Ø LDX ≠Ø
78Ø loop
```

Errors 185

Listing 15 2 continued

```
79Ø LDA (&F2),Y
 8ØØ AND ≠&DF
 810 CMP convert,X
82Ø BNE exit
83Ø INY
 84Ø INX
 85Ø CPX ≠7
 86Ø BNE loop
 87Ø \
 88Ø STZ lo
 89Ø STZ hi
 9ØØ \
91Ø JSR spaces
 92Ø \
93Ø
     nextchar
94Ø LDA (&F2),Y
 95Ø CMP ≠13
960 BEQ complete
 97Ø CMP ≠ASC" "
 98Ø BEQ end
 99Ø CMP ≠ASC'Ø'
IØØØ BCC bad
IØIØ CMP ≠&3A
1020 BCC digit
IØ3Ø CMP ≠ASC"A"
1040 BCC bad
IØ5Ø CMP ≠ASC"G"
1060 BCS bad
1Ø7Ø SBC ≠&36
IØ8Ø \
IØ9Ø
     digit
IIØØ ASL A
IIIØ ASL A
ÎÎ2Ø ASL A
II3Ø ASL A
ÎÎ4Ø LDX ≠4
115Ø \
II6Ø
     aslrol
117Ø ASL A
II8Ø ROL lo
II9Ø ROL hi
1200 BCS large
121Ø DEX
122Ø BNE aslrol
123Ø INY
124Ø BNE nextchar
125Ø \
     end
126Ø
```

186

Listing 15 2 continued

```
127Ø JSR spaces
128Ø CMP ≠13
1290 BEQ complete
13ØØ LDX ≠Ø
I3IØ BEQ skipI
132Ø
     bad
1330 LDX ≠badnum-size
1340 BNE skip1
135Ø \
1360 large
137Ø LDX ≠Ø
     skipÎ
138Ø
139Ø LDY ≠Ø
1400 STY &100
I4IØ \
I42Ø transfer
1430 LDA size,X
1440 STA &IØI,Y
145∅ BEQ done
146Ø INX
147Ø INY
1480 BNE transfer
149Ø \
15ØØ
     done
151Ø JMP &1ØØ
Î52Ø \
153Ø
     size
154Ø EQUB 2Ø
155Ø EQUS "ErrorROM Too big"
Î56Ø EQUB Ø
157Ø
     badnum
158Ø EQUB 28
1590 EOUS "ErrorROM
                      Bad Hex
16ØØ EQUB Ø
1610
162Ø
     loop2
163Ø INY
I64Ø
     spaces
165Ø LDA (&F2),Y
166Ø CMP≠ASC" "
167Ø BEQ 100p2
168Ø RTS
169Ø
17ØØ 1
1710 NEXT pass
172Ø ENDPROC
173Ø
1740 DEF PROCchecksum
```

Errors 187

Listing I5 2 continued

1750 N%=0 1760 FOR X%=&5000 TO &5100 1770 N%=N%+?X% 1780 NEXT 1790 IF N%=28080 THEN ENDPROC 1800 VDU 7 1810 PRINT"Assembler error! 1820 STOP

Listing $\hat{1}5$ 3 Demonstration of printing and handling errors from within a ROM

```
ÎØ REM ErrorWise Language ROM
 20 REM (C) Bruce Smith June 1986
 3Ø REM Advanced SRAM Guide
 40
                    buffer=&3000
 5Ø osrdch=&FFEØ
                 brkh1=&2Ø3
 6Ø brklo=&2Ø2
 7Ø PROCassemble
 8Ø PROCchecksum
 9Ø *SRWRITE 5ØØØ +2ØØ 8ØØØ 7
IØØ END
riø
120 DEF PROCassemble
13Ø osnewl=&FFE7
140 FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
15Ø P%=&8ØØØ
               O%=&5ØØØ
16Ø [
170 OPT pass
180 JMP language
19Ø JMP service
2ØØ EQUB &C2
210 EQUB offset MOD 256
22Ø EQUB Î
23Ø title
24Ø EOUS "ErrorWise"
25Ø EQUB Ø
26Ø
    version
27Ø EQUS " I ØØ"
28Ø EQUB Ø
    offset
29Ø
3ØØ EQUB Ø
310 EQUS "(C) Bruce Smith"
32Ø EQUB Ø
33Ø
    service
34Ø CMP ≠9
```

35Ø BEQ help

```
36Ø CMP ≠4
37Ø BEQ unrecognised
38Ø RTS
39Ø \
400 help
4ÎØ JSR osnewl
42Ø LDX ≠&FF
43Ø JSR helploop
44Ø JSR helploop
45Ø JSR osnewl
46Ø RTS
47Ø \
48Ø helploop
49Ø INX
5ØØ LDA title,X
510 BEO finish
52Ø JSR &FFE3
53Ø BRA helploop
54Ø finish
55Ø RTS
56Ø
57Ø exit
58Ø PLY
59Ø PLX
6ØØ PLA
61Ø RTS
62Ø \
63Ø command
64Ø EQUS "ERRORWISE"
65Ø \
660 unrecognised
67Ø PHA
68Ø PHX
69Ø PHY
7ØØ LDX ≠Ø
71Ø loop
72Ø LDA (&F2),Y
73Ø AND ≠&DF
74Ø CMP command, X
75Ø BNE exit
76Ø INY
77Ø INX
78Ø CPX ≠9
79Ø BNE loop
8ØØ \
81ø
82Ø LDX &F4
```

83Ø LDA ≠142

Errors 189

Listing I5 3 continued 84Ø JMP &FFF4 85Ø 86Ø language 87Ø LDA ≠error DIV 256 88Ø STA brkhi 89Ø LDA ≠error MOD 256 900 STA brklo 9ÎØ 92Ø stackset 93Ø LDX ≠255 94Ø TXS 95Ø CLI 96Ø JSR &FFE7 97Ø 98Ø mainloop 99Ø LDA ≠ASC"=" 1000 JSR &FFEE 1010 JSR osrdch 1020 BCS escape 1Ø3Ø CMP ≠ASC"*" 1040 BEQ star 1Ø5Ø CMP ≠13 1060 BNE doerror 1070 JSR &FFE7 IØ8Ø BRA mainloop IØ9Ø IIØØ star IIIØ JSR &FFE7 II2Ø LDA ≠ASC"*" 113Ø JSR &FFEE TT4Ø LDY ≠blk DIV 256 115Ø LDX ≠blk MOD 256 ÎÎ6Ø LDA ≠Ø 117Ø JSR &FFF1 **II8Ø** BCS escape 119Ø 12ØØ LDY ≠buffer DIV 256 1210 LDX ≠buffer MOD 256 122Ø JSR &FFF7 123Ø JMP mainloop 124Ø Î25Ø escape 126Ø LDA ≠126 127Ø JSR &FFF4 128Ø BRK 129Ø EQUB I 1300 EQUS "ErrorROM Escape" 131Ø EQUB Ø

19Ø Errors

Listing I5 3 continued

```
132Ø
133Ø
     doerror
134Ø BRK
135Ø EQUB 2
1360 EQUS "ErrorROM Illegal Command"
137Ø EQUB Ø
138Ø
139Ø
1400 error
141Ø LDY ≠1
142Ø JSR &FFE7
143Ø loop
I440 LDA (&FD),Y
1450 BEQ end
146Ø JSR &FFEE
147Ø INY
148Ø BNE 100p
1490 end
1500 JSR &FFE7
1510 JMP stackset
152Ø
I53Ø
      blk
1540 EQUB buffer MOD 256
155Ø EQUB buffer DIV 256
156Ø EQUB 2Ø
157Ø EQUB 32
158Ø EQUB 127
159Ø
I6ØØ ]
1610 NEXT pass
162Ø ENDPROC
163Ø
164Ø DEF PROCchecksum
165Ø N%=Ø
166Ø FOR X%=&5ØØØ TO &51Ø8
167Ø N%=N%+?X%
168Ø NEXT
169Ø IF N%=31281 THEN ENDPROC
1700 PRINT"Assembler error!"
1710 VDU 7
1720 STOP
```

Glossary

battery-backed

an exact address, le &2000 is an absolute address absolute address workspace given over to ROMs which absolute may be used freely by all ROMs workspace the main register of the 65\02/65\12 accumulator microprocessor Advanced Disc Filing System **ADFS** Advanced Network Filing System ANFS mnemonic language in which assembly assembler language programs may be written Part of the BASIC ROM which converts assembler mnemonics into machine code pressing the SHIFT and BREAK keys auto-boot together will allow a previouslywritten 'BOOT file to be run directly American Standard Code for ASCII Information Interchange - the character coding scheme whereby each number, letter or symbol key has its own special code that may be printed to display the character a sideways RAM bank - one of bank several areas of memory similar in

size and memory address

contents

memory that has a charge applied by

a small battery when the machine is turned off thereby preserving its

binary	a numbering system to a base of 2
- -	using only the Γ and \emptyset digits
bit	a single digit in a binary number
boot	to initialise/start-up a
branch	computer or program to move the operation of a program
branch	to another point, normally
	calculated as an offset from the
	current position
BRK	the assembler mnemonic for the BRK
	(break) operation
BRKV	vector through which control is
	passed when the computer executes
buffer	a BRK instruction
buller	area of memory used to store incoming/outgoing information
bump	to increment by one
byte	the smallest area of memory -
2700	capable of holding a number in the
	range Ø to 255 inclusive
carry (flag)	flag in the status register used to
	indicate overflow or underflow
	during addition or subtraction
channel	memory path along which information
-1	is passed
checksum	utility which counts the number of
	commands in a program This can be compared to a given value
CMOS	Complementary Metal Oxide
	Semiconductor - a family of chips
	with low power consumption
configure	to define a system to personal needs
co-processor	board which fits inside the main cas
	and takes over the computer's main
	tasks
crash	to cease operating as expected,
	normally caused by a program malfunction
CRC	cyclic redundancy check - a common
Cite	error detecting code
	one account out
debugging	process of weeding out errors in a
	program
DFS	Disc Filing System controls access
3	of micro to disc drive
directory	a specially-defined area of a disc
DNFS	into which files can be saved Disc Network Filing System - a
DRES	combined DFS and NFS chip
	comprised bro and arb entp

dump	paper copy (usually) or screen display of memory or file contents
dynamic	memory claimed by ROM for its
workspace	own use The amount claimed will
	vary from ROM to ROM and the memory
	boundary will move, ie, is dynamic
entry point	point in a program where control is
chery point	transferred to, 1e from where 1t
	begins its operation
EPROM	Erasable/Programable Read Only
	Memory - a chip which may be
	programmed with an EPROM
	programmer The contents are
	permanent unless erased by an
	ultra violet light source
EQUB/EQUW	commands used by the
	assembler in BASIC 2 and later
	versions, to assemble specific
	<pre>items of data code number which defines the last</pre>
error number	error that occurred Obtained with
	PRINT ERR
execution address	the point at which control is
execution address	transferred to carry out the task
	of the program or command
explode	to load the character set from ROM
cp.200	into main user memory thus allowing
	it to be changed
extended vector	a means whereby a vector may be
entry	redirected into ROMs other than the
	current language thus enabling them
	to perform tasks along with the
	current language ROM
filing system	ROM chip that controls the flow of
iiiing system	data to and from storage medium
	such as disc, net or cassette
fırmware	programs supplied in chip form
flag	a byte, bit or variable that is
•	used to signal that a condition has
	or has not be met with
font	design of the letters in a
	character set,
	eg standard, italic, bold etc
garbage	undefined or random memory contents
JJ-	
handle	number assigned to the current file
	by the filing system

hash header	an abbreviated form of header used in the ROM Filing System, so called because it uses the ≠ symbol
hex	hexadecimal - a number system based on 16
high-level language	language not written in the native language of the computer (ie not machine code)
hang-up	micro becomes unresponsive unless the BREAK or CTRL-BREAK keys are
header	pressed to reset the system section of code containing a CRC and file information at the start of a file stored on a filing medium
Hı language	languages that have been customised to run in a second or co-processor, eg Hi-BASIC
hidden RAM	12k area of memory that is used by the MOS and ROMs It is not available for normal use and hence is 'hidden'
high byte	the upper, higher value byte in a two-byte number
housekeeping	to tidy up and do chores required to keep operation smooth running
ıd	<pre>identifier each ROM slot has an id number associated with it</pre>
ımage	copy of a ROM on disc or cassette, etc
ımplode	opposite of explode, ie, to use the ROM-based character set
increment	add one to the contents of a number or register
ınıtıalıse	reset/set before continuing
ınternal key	each ASCII character has a specific
number	number for the micro's own use
ınterpreter	section of machine code that is capable of recognising/identifying a sequence of ASCII characters
interrupt	signal generated by a chip or external device that stops the microprocessor's operation
IRQ	Interrupt Request - an interrupt that may be ignored by the processor under certain conditions
JMP/JSR	assembler mnemonics JMP is JuMP to a given address, JSR is Jump Save Return, a form of GOSUB

anguage ROM ow byte	ROM containing a language lower value byte of a two-byte number
achine code	native language of all microprocessors
aın Tube	main routine used to set up and
initialisation	define the operation of the Tube
asking	technique whereby the bits within a byte may be manipulated using a
	logical operator, eg, AND main sideways ROM within the Master
egaROM	containing all of the ROMs
	supplied Referred to as the
	Megabit ROM because of its 128k
	size (I million bits)
onitor	watch, observe and alter the
	contents of memory Software used
	to watch the operation of a machine
	<pre>code program Machine Operating System - the</pre>
os	firmware that controls the micro
	filmware that controls and missis
et	network filing systems, eg Econet,
	whereby machines are linked
	together via a series of cables and
	share one main disc drive
FS	Network Filing System group of 4 bits, half a byte
1bble	Non-Maskable Interrupt - this may
MI	not be ignored by the microprocessor
ffset pointer	index which, when added to an
	absolute address, will point to a
	selected address
pcode	term given to the operation code
	for a byte of machine code variable used to assign the output
PT	required during the assembly of a
	machine code program
SHWM	Operating System High Water Mark -
D	usually the same value as PAGE, but
	the first byte free for use above
	the workspace stored at the
	beginning of memory
ACE	address at which a program will be
AGE	stored
aged ROM	another term for sideways ROM
aging	process of selecting and
J J	

deselecting sideways ROMs parameter block

area of memory into which information is stored to pass it to

the MOS when an OS call is used

peek examine memory contents poke alter memory contents polling interrupt

process of ascertaining which device caused an interrupt by asking each

one in turn

switching on the micro power-up

memory used privately by a ROM - no private RAM

other ROM may use the private

workspace

remove an item of data from a stack pull place an item of data on a stack push

Random Access Memory - volatile memory used to store programs and RAM information for use by the computer The contents are erased when power

is removed

RAM bank see bank

special location within the register

microprocessor

reset initialise the system

second processor see co-processor

message issued by the MOS The service call resulting action is defined by

a code number in the

accumulator

point in a ROM through which a service entry

service call is processed point ROM that is only capable of service ROM

actioning service calls, ie it does

not have a language - only * commands are recognised

technique whereby ROM images can be sideways RAM

switched in and out of the same area of memory

reset that is only partial Happens when BREAK key is pressed soft reset

stack area of memory onto which data can

be pushed and pulled in the form of a linear list which appears to move

up and down on each push and/or

pu 11

static workspace reserved memory that does not

change in size and is available for use by all ROMs (1e the Master

	version of BBC micro's absolute workspace in hidden RAM)
table	list of commands, addresses or data for use by a program
toggle	single command that works like a switch Use of the command will set or reset depending on the current status, ie if set it will reset and vice versa
TOP	BASIC's variable that stores the address of the next free byte after the program
transfer routine	small program or subroutine that will move data from one point to another
Tube	registered trademark of Acorn used to describe the connection mechanism between computer and
type table	second or co-processor table stored in memory in which the ROM type is held by the MOS
USERV	USER Vector address
vector	two-byte location which contains an address
volatile (RAM)	contents are erased when power is removed
workspace	area of memory in which ROMs may perform calculations
workspace X register	area of memory in which ROMs may perform calculations store in the 6502/6512 microprocessor used by assembler
-	perform calculations store in the 6502/6512
X register	perform calculations store in the 65\(\theta\)2/65\(\text{I2}\) microprocessor used by assembler store in the 65\(\theta\)2/65\(\text{I2}\)

Appendix A **Hex and Binary**

This book makes no attempt to teach assembly language to readers, and those who are unclear on this topic should look to the books in the reference list However, as a grasp of assembler and binary techniques is necessary to make the most of this book, a brief summary is given here

Computers work by manipulating numbers, though in instances this is transparent to the user, especially in high level languages such as BASIC However, the numbering system used by computers is not a decimal one It is based on the binary number system

In binary there are only two numbers, namely Ø and I sight this seems to be a severe limitation But consider a number system that you are familiar with - the decimal system Here there are just ten digits, $m{\emptyset}$ to $m{9}$ inclusive However we can form larger numbers by forming groups of numbers, for example, $ilde{ t 12}$, $exttt{345}$ and $exttt{5678}$ are larger numbers, using the base numbers, Ø to 9, as building In the same way we can use the base digits \emptyset and $\overline{\mathbf{I}}$ to form larger binary numbers, for example, ØI, IØIØ, ØØIØØI and so forth

The next step is to learn how these numbers of binary bits, are read Again consider the decimal digits, or system and the number 1234 As we are working to a base of 10, the value of each digit increases ten fold as we move from right to left Therefore reading from right to left we have

- units, or 4*I=4
- tens, or $3*(I\emptyset*I)=3\emptyset$
- hundreds, or $2*(I\emptyset*I\emptyset*I)=2\emptyset\emptyset$ thousand, or $I*(I\emptyset*I\emptyset*I\emptyset*I)=I\emptyset\emptyset\emptyset$

adding this together gives

It is no different in binary except that we are now working to a base of 2, therefore numbers increase by a factor of two as we move from right to left Consider the binary number IIDI Reading from right to left we have

f unit, or I*I=I
g twos, or Ø*(2*I)=Ø
f fours, or I*(2*2*I)=4
l eights, or I*(2*2*2*I)=8

adding these together gives

$$8+4+\emptyset+1=13$$

therefore IIØI is I3 in decimal

Each piece of computer memory, into which an item of data can be stored is called a byte. There are eight binary digits in a single byte, or in the jargon, eight bits in a byte. Therefore the largest binary value that can be stored in a single byte is

11111111

If you multiply this out as above you find that this is 255 decimal

Decimal	Binary	Hexadecimal
Ø	ØØØØ	ø
Ĩ	ØØØI	1
2	ØØIØ	2
3	ØØII	3
4	ØIØØ	4 5
5	ØIØI	
6	ØIIØ	6
7	ØIII	7
8	IØØØ	8
9	iøøi	9
ÍØ	IØIØ	A
11	IØII	В
12	11øø	С
13	IIØI	D
14	ğ111	E
15	IIII	F

Table AI Number conversion

As you can imagine when dealing with computers using a system that is simply lines of ones and numbering zeroes is somewhat long-winded and very prone to error So numbering system called hexadecimal was introduced The hexadecimal system is calculated to a base of 16 This is not as difficult as it may at first seem

First, we cannot just use the numbers Ø to 9 to represent I6 digits So possible to represent the decimal equivalents of **I**Ø to **I**5 we use the letters A to F inclusive Table AI sumarises the decimal, binary hexadecimal equivalents

Table AT will enable you to convert any binary number to

hexadecimal and vice versa, believe it or not!

If you look at the binary column you will see that I have always used four digits This is because the largest single hex (short for hexadecimal) digit is represented in four bits, ie F=IIII I mentioned above that a byte bits wide, therefore the value of a byte can be represented by just two hex digits, simply by converting the byte into two halfs and using the above table

Consider the binary number, IIØØØIØI Break this into two halves of four bits, called nibbles, and we have

IIØØ and ØIØI

Use the above table and we see that

IIØØ = C and \emptyset I \emptyset I = 5

therefore IIØØØIØI in binary is C5 in hex To distinguish that it is a hex number we place an & in front of it, &C5 To convert a hex number into binary we work in the opposite direction Thus the number &DA simplifies to

D = IIØIA = IØIØtherefore &DA = IIØIIØIØ

Converting between hex and decimal and vice versa is less straightforward It can be done using the Master For example, typing

PRINT &DA

would cause the Master to print the decimal equivalent of &DA Typing

PRINT ~123

would print the hexadecimal value of the decimal 123

Obviously we have just dealt with single-byte numbers But multibyte numbers are converted in exactly the same fashion. Just break the number down into single bytes and then proceed as normal As an example the number &CAFE becomes

C = IIØØ A = IØIØ F = IIII E = IIIØ

Therefore &CAFE = IIØØ IØIØ IIII IIIØ Note that the number is split into its basic nibbles. This makes reading and manipulating it that much easier on the eyes!

Appendix B **Conversions and** Compatibility: **BBC** and Electron

The techniques contained in this book are primarily written for the Master series of computers However, bearing in mind that the BBC series of computers is an evolutionary one and that compatibility is an important feature of that evolution, many programs will run with minimal changes Certainly the techniques discussed are applicable notes that follow will point out the main areas incompatibility with solutions where possible Table lists the programs that will work providing suitable adaptations, as detailed below, are performed

Assembler

The Master is based on the 65CT2 microprocessor chip This has a slightly better machine code instruction set than the $65\emptyset2$ and $65\widehat{1}2$ microprocessors that form the heart of the BBC B and BBC B+ micros The assembler listings presented here are written to take advantage of the increased instruction set

Instructions used within listings that are not supported by the $65\,\text{M}2$ and $65\,\text{L}2$ microprocessors in the BBC B, BBC B+ and BBC B+128 micros are

PHX - Push X onto stack

PHY - Push Y onto stack PLX - Pull X from stack

PLX - Pull Y from stack

STZ - Store zero at location

Program	BBC B+I28k	BBC B+	BBC B
			
ĪĪ	Yes	Yes	Yes
2 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
2 2 3 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
3 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
4 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
4 2	Yes	Yes	Yes
4 3	Yes	Yes	Yes
4 4	No	No	No
5 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
5 2	Yes *	Yes*	Yes *
6 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
6 2	Yes	Yes	Yes
6 3	Yes	Yes	Yes
6 4	Yes	Yes	Yes
7 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
8 Î	No	No	No
8 2	No	No	No
9 Î	No	No	No
IØ I	Yes	Yes	Yes
1 11	Yes	Yes	Yes
13 I	Yes	Yes	Yes
14 I	Yes	Yes	Yes
15 Î	Yes	Yes	Yes
1 5 2	Yes	Yes	Yes

^{*} Character font must be exploded with *FX2Ø,6

Table BI Program compatibility

However, these are simple to simulate, the equivalents of each are

Master	BBC B,B+,B+I28
PHX	TXA PHA
PHY	ТҮА РНА
PLX	PHA TAX
PLY	PHA TAY
STZ location	PHA LDA ≠Ø STA location PHA

Assembler options 4 to 7 rely on BASIC 2 in non-Master machines. The only easy way to simulate these in BASIC $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$ is to add an offset to all absolute addresses

10 d%=&3000 P%=&5000 100 STA base+d%

would ensure address in the &8000 range (details later)

Important Note Altering assembler listings will alter the checksum value calculated, so giving an 'Assembler error' message This should be ignored or the checksum calculation routine left out of the program

Service Calls

The following service calls are unique to the Master series

- &15 Polling interrupt
- &18 Interactive *HELP
- &21 Indicate static workspace in hidden RAM
- &22 Claim private workspace
- &23 Top of static workspace
- &24 Indicate workspace requirements
- &25 Inform MOS of filing system details
- &26 Close all files
- &27 Reset has occurred
- &28 Unknown *CONFIGURE
- &29 Unknown *STATUS
- &2A ROM language starting up

Calls &24 and &22 have direct equivalents in calls &1 and &2 in the BBC B series computers and these should be used instead, claiming normal RAM as static and private RAM

It is likely that Acorn may release an upgraded version of the MOS to include these calls at a future date In such a case the above calls may well be of use

BBC B+ 128k

This micro has the same memory arrangements as the Master, except that the hidden RAM is not used as per the Master Refer to your User Guide for possible applications for this space. As the BBC B+ 128k contains four 16k banks of sideways RAM, the sideways RAM utilities described, ie *SRWRITE, *SRLOAD, *SRREAD and *SRSAVE are all implemented However the ROM identities are different, sideways RAM banks have identities W, X, Y and Z. Thus references to ROM identities 4,5,6 and 7 in text and listings should be changed to W, X, Y or Z.

BBC B and B+

These micros need to have sideways RAM fitted Consult magazine reviews and advertisements for details on the types available The sideways RAM utilities detailed above are not present, however your RAM board should explain how to transfer ROM images from disc into the RAM In addition

to assembler changes you will need to alter the line containing the sideways RAM utility, typically *SRWRITE This need just be changed to a simple *SAVE to save the code generated by the assembly listing Thus

*SAVE name <start addr> <end addr>

where 'name' is the assigned filename. The file can then be loaded into sideways RAM with the appropriate utility. Some sideways RAM boards allow you to assemble directly into the sideways RAM itself. In such cases *SAVE is not necessary P% can be set directly to &8000, O% can be omitted and the DPT parameters can be adapted to 0 and 3 thus

FOR pass=Ø TO 3 STEP 3

For assembling in this manner you will need to use a special routine to read the ROM image back into memory prior to saving it to tape or disc. Again your ROM board instruction manual should contain details. If not, simply place the OSRDRM routine at &FFB9 in a suitable loop Details of this call can be found in Chapter 12

Electron

There are some SRAM boards available for the Electron, notably those marketed by Advanced Computer Products (ACP) and Solidisk (incorporated with their Electron DFS - EFS) Both of these require the PlusI to be fitted

To convert the programs to run then follow the conversion notes above for the BBC B micro BASIC 2 is fitted on the Electron therefore both OPT and EQU functions are present

OPT 4 to 7

BASIC version 4 as supplied with the Master series, and BASIC version 2 as supplied with later versions of the BBC B, B+ and B+ I28k micros contain extra assembly options that cater directly for offset assembly

It is not normally possible to assemble ROM images into sideways RAM Straight assembly into other areas of memory is of little use as all absolute addresses will not be correct Consider the following short segment of assembler

FOR pass=Ø TO 3 STEP 3 P%=&5ØØØ [OPT pass start
JMP language
JMP service

service
] NEXT pass

If the label service was offset from start by &52 byte then the code assembled by JMP service will be the equivalent of

JMP &5Ø52

This could not be used correctly within sideways RAM The address that should be assembled, needs to be

JMP &8Ø52

One way around this is to add an offset to all absolute addresses, thus the above code becomes

FOR pass=Ø TO 3 STEP 3
P%=&5ØØØ D%=&8ØØØ-P%
[OPT pass
start
JMP language+D%
JMP service+D%

service NEXT pass

Now when JMP service is evaluated it will have &3000 added to it to give the correct address

This is not an elegant and friendly solution. The BASIC assembler now caters for this OPTs 4, 5, 6, and 7 are the direct equivalents of OPTs Ø, I, 2, and 3 except that offset assembly takes place. Now code is listed on the screen as though it is assembling to P% but in actual fact it is being assembled at the location pointed to by O%

FOR pass=4 TO 7 STEP 3
P%=&8000 O%=&5000
[OPT pass
start
JMP language
JMP service

service NEXT pass

In the above program machine code is generated correctly for &8000, but is in fact stored at &5000

Appendix C Listings Details

Details of the 25 programs contained in this book are listed below, along with any special commands or procedures they include which could be used in your own programs. The suggested save names in the chapters are also given in brackets

Listing I I Simple sideways RAM demonstration (DEMO)
This listing shows just how easy it can be to produce
a sideways RAM image. It does not use assembler,
instead it uses machine code as DATA statements

Commands added

Other features

*BEEP produces a beep on the speaker
*HELP processes a simple *HELP message

Procedures

PROCread reads DATA
PROCchecksum checks program entered

First use of *SRWRITE command

Listing 2 Î Read ROM table address (TABLE)
Demonstrates use of OSBYTE Î7Ø to read start address of
ROM table in RAM

Listing 2 2 Form ROM header (HEADER)
Illustrates how a standard ROM header is produced

Commands added *HELP processes a simple *HELP

message

Procedures PROCgetstring inputs title

and copyright strings

PROCassemble assembles header using

above information

Other features Illustrates use of service entry

Listing 3 I Trace ROM (TRACE)
Forms sideways ROM image to show what service calls are
being issued by the MOS as and when they are

Other features Binary to ASCII hexadecimal string conversion routine to print service call number as a two-digit hex number

Listing 4 T Simple *HELP ROM (HELPT)
Shows how service call 9 is trapped to output a standard *HELP message defined by the title string of the ROM

Commands added *HELP processes a simple *HELP message
Other features Provides standard print routine for
*HELP response Outputs ROM title string

Listing 4 2 Print version number on *HELP (HELP2) Enhanced version of listing 4 T It prints the ASCII version number in addition to the standard *HELP message

Commands added *HELP processes a simple *HELP
Other features Recodes *HELP printing algorithm more
efficiently

Listing 4 3 Extended *HELP (HELP3)
Shows how to make *HELP response more informative In addition to printing title string message, it prints a string called 'Command' When *HELP COMMAND is entered the ROM will respond with a description of commands that would be contained within the ROM image

Commands added *HELP prints title message version number *HELP COMMANDS prints details of commands that may be held within that ROM

Other features Illustrates use of a simple one-command interpreter Shows how characters may be forced to upper case Uses MOS vector at &F2 Shows how marker bytes may be used Demonstrates how to preserve and restore processor registers This listing is the basis for many in the book

Listing 4 4 Interactive *HELP (HELP4) Shows how service call 24 may be trapped to provide interactive *HELP messages, perhaps to print information should it be required by the user

*HELP prints title string and version Commands added number

Traps service call 24 Asks if you wish Other features more details about the ROM If reply is Y then more information is printed by the print routine, else ROM returns control

Listing 5 1 Test interpreter (INTERP) added how three new commands can be demonstrates the standard way of interpreting commmands entered at the keyboard

*MODERN bleeps speaker initially Commands added *STANDARD bleeps speaker initially

*ITALICS bleeps speaker

*HELP prints title string, version *HELP COMMANDS prints extended help

Other features

First use of service call 4 trapping Shows construction of command and address table Illustrates use of marker bytes and use of status register flags to indicate where you are in the command table Provides interpreter routine Uses search and compare routine to compare command entered with commands in the command table Provides 'move on' routine to search for next command in table Shows how command execution address may be extracted from command table and jumped to

Listing 5 2 Command coding (MODERN) This listing is added to listing 5 f and provides you with a 'modern' style character font that can be used in all modes except mode 7

Commands added *MODERN selects modern characters *STANDARD reselects standard font *ITALICS produces bleep on speaker *HELP prints title string, version number

Shows how look-up and data tables can Other features be used Routines provided to save and restore zero page workspace onto stack Listing 6 Î OSBYTE ROM (OSBYTE)
Implements a new OSBYTE call number &64 to convert the binary value in X to a two-digit ASCII hex value returned in X and Y

Commands added *HELP prints title and version number *HELP OSBYTE prints OSBYTE call details

Other features Traps service call 7 Uses binary to ASCII hex conversion routine

Listing 6 2 Test new OSBYTE call (OSBTEST) This routine shows how easy it is to use the new OSBYTE call provided by listing 6 $\hat{\Gamma}$

Listing 6 3 OSWORD ROM'(OSWORD)

Implements new OSWORD call, number &65, to convert, and, if required, print two binary numbers into a ASCII hex string

Commands added *HELP prints title string, version number
*HELP OSWORD prints OSWORD call details

Other features Two-byte binary to ASCII hex conversion routine Illustrates how to place and extract details from a parameter block How to use sign bytes in parameter block

Listing 6 4 Test new OSWORD call (OSWTEST)
Shows how to use new OSWORD call provided by listing 6 3

Listing 7 I Extended vector ROM (VECTOR)

Demonstrates how to set up an extended vector to point into a sideways ROM It resets USERV

Commands added *HELP prints title string and version number
*HELP VECTORS prints extended vector details

*ON turns extended vector on *OFF turns extended vector off

Other features Shows use of ROM extended vector table Illustrates resetting of MOS vectors to point into a sideways ROM, and how to reset them again

Listing 8 I Polling interrupt ROM (POLLING)
Shows how to trap service call 2I after *FX22 issued

Commands added *HELP prints title string and version number

*HELP POLLING prints polling details
Other features Shows how interrupts can be caught IDD
times per second to increment a

counter

Shows how to increment two-byte number

Listing 8 2 Print date on reset (TIME)
Traps reset service call, number 39, and uses it to
print the date onto the screen Thus each time a hard
reset is performed the date will be displayed as well
as the standard start-up messages

Commands added *HELP prints title string, version number

*HELP DATE prints date details
Other features Reads real time clock using OSWORD &E
Illustrates trapping of service call
39

Listing 9 1 Configure and status ROM (DATE)
This program adds a new *CONFIGURE and *STATUS option
to the ones already existing Namely whether or not to
display the date on a reset as detailed above

Commands added *HELP prints title string and version *HELP DATE prints configure/status

details
*CONFIGURE DATE ON/OFF configures date
option so it is either on or off

*STATUS DATE displays current date

status

Other features Shows use of service calls 40 and 41 and how to use battery-backed bytes allocated to sideways ROM Use of OSWORD &E to read real-time clock

Listing IØ I Auto-boot ROM (BOOT)
How ROMs may be booted to perform specific tasks by pressing another key in addition to SHIFT-BREAK

Commands added *HELP prints title string and version *HELP BOOT prints Boot options available

Other features Shows use of service call 3 Provides boot facilities for choosing ROM filing

system and to catalogue disc How to use OSBYTE &8A to insert commands into input buffer

Listing II I Private workspace ROM (PRIVATE)
Claiming and using private ROM workspace in hidden RAM

locations &70 to &8F

Commands added

*HELP prints title string and version
*HELP COMMANDS prints command details
*PUSH saves locations &70 to &8F in
private ROM workspace
*PULL transfers *PUSHed bytes from
private ROM workspace back into

Other features

Shows use of service calls 34 and 36 How to claim 256 bytes of private ROM workspace within hidden RAM Shows how to use private ROM workspace and ROM workspace table Routines 'writeon' and 'writeoff' supplied to enable hidden RAM workspace to be used

Listing I2 I Read title string from ROM (READ)
Demonstrates OSRDRM

Listing 13 1 ROM Filing System (RFS) formatter (ROMFS) Converts any BASIC programs into a 16k ROM image Programs can be loaded from sideways RAM directly into memory using the ROM filing system (RFS)

Commands added Other features *HELP prints title string and version Shows use of service calls I3 and I4 How to calculate header and program checksum values Formatting of BASIC programs into RFS format

PROCformat controls main formatting

Procedures

PROChandle formats multi-block code
PROCfilehead forms block header and
calculates header check (CRC)
PROCgetdata reads program from disc
and places it in ROM image
PROChash creates hash header
PROCassemble assembles machine code to
calculate CRC

PROCromhead assembles ROM header with service calls

PROCnottape reads file catalogue PROCsave saves ROM image to disc, etc

Listing 13 2 Hex and ASCII dump utility (DUMPER)

Listing 14 I MASMON language ROM (MASMON)
How to write a simple language ROM. The example is
MASMON the Master Monitor, a machine code hex and ASCII
dump program

Commands added *HELP prints title string and version
*MASMON enters the larguage ROM
Other features Shows use of language entry point Use
of OSBYTE &8E Hex and ASCII dump
routine How to convert ASCII hex
string into a two-byte binary number

Listing 15 1 BRK errors (BRK)
Small assembly language program showing how error codes and error messages are stored within ROMs

Listing I5 2 Error test ROM (ERRORI)
How to print error messages from within a service ROM

Commands added *HELP prints title string and version *CONVERT converts following hex number into a two-byte binary value

Other features Supplies two new errors
ErrorROM Too Big, greater than &FFFF
ErrorROM Bad Hex, number not hex
Sets up error table and shows use of
error numbers Uses stack as error
buffer and provides routine to copy
message from ROM onto stack

Listing 15 3 Errorwise language ROM (ERROR2)
How to print and handle errors from within a language

Commands added *HELP prints title string and version

*ERRORWISE enters language ROM

Other features Shows how to claim BRKV

How to restore ROM after an error

How to implement OSCLI within a ROM

Further example of a language ROM

Program Disc

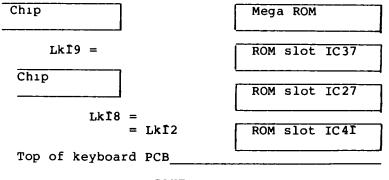
Note that all these programs are available on a disc from Victory Publishing Please turn to order form after the Index

Appendix D Links

When you receive your Master, the sideways RAM is set up and ready to use However, if you wish to use any of the internal ROM sockets this can only be done at the loss of some SRAM. The option you decide to take up is defined by the position of two links inside the Master's case on the main circuit board. The links are LKI8 and LKI9.

To change the links you will need to remove the top of the Master case - this is done by undoing the four fixing screws marked 'fix' on the underside With the lid removed and the keyboard facing you the four ROM slots can be clearly seen to the right side immediately

NORTH



SOUTH

Figure DI Position of links on circuit board

above the keyboard The MegaROM can be clearly seen in the topmost of these sockets Link LKI9 can be found to the left and slightly below the MegaROM while link LKI8 is to the left of the bottom most 'empty' ROM socket, and above link LKI2 The links are marked on the main circuit board in white Take a look at figure DI

Link I8

When fitted in the WEST position, this link cause 16k of RAM to appear in each of the SRAM memory slots numbers 6 and 7 When fitted in the EAST position, a ROM up to 32k in size occupying slots 4 and 5 may be plugged into the socket labelled IC4I

Link 19

When fitted in the WEST position, this link will allow 16k of SRAM to appear in slots 4 and 5 When fitted in the EAST position a ROM up to 32k may be plugged in socket IC37 The ROM will occupy slots 6 and 7

Link Geography

Link settings are referred to by points of the compass With the keyboard facing you, south is nearest, north is to the rear, west is to the left and east is to the right Most links consist of three pins and a shorting link of two pins is placed across the central pin to one on either side If a link is made WEST then the shorting link is placed on the west or leftmost of the three pins Similarly if a link is made east, the shorting pins are placed across the rightmost of the three links Figure D2 shows this

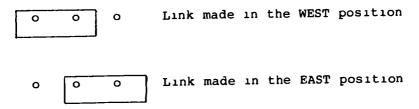


Figure D2 Link settings

Note also that all the chips on the circuit board are placed with the half-moon at one end facing north

Appendix E Postscript

Since writing and preparing this text the following items have come to light prior to going to press

Interactive Help

This service call is primarily intended for use with networks On receiving the call, the ANFS will look at the fileserver for a file called 'HELP and run this With the ANFS installed the service call may not get passed to sideways ROMs of a lower priority

Language ROMs

If you try to boot a language ROM that does not conform strictly to the protocols defined in this book then the MOS will respond with the error message

'This is not a Language'

and refuse to boot the ROM The most common culprit is the use of a lower-case 'c' rather that the required upper-case 'C' to form the copyright string

OSWORD Calls

Two OSWORD calls are provided to allow emulation of *SRREAD, *SRWITE, SRLOAD and SRSAVE from machine code programs - details are as follows

OSWORD 66 (&42) Block transfer to/from SRAM (performs *SRREAD and *SRWRITE)

Parameter block $XY + \emptyset$ bit 7 - \emptyset to read SRAM bit 7 - I to write to SRAM

```
bit6 - Ø for absolute addressing
bit6 - I for psuedo addressing
                        bits Ø-5 - all at Ø
                       <LSB of start address>
                XY+I
                XY+2
                 XY+3
                 XY+4 <MSB of start address>
XY+5 <LSB of block length>
                 XY+6 <MSB of block length>
                 XY+7 <ROM 1d>
XY+8 <LSB of sideways address>
                        <MSB of sideways address>
                 XY+9
On exit, the parameter block remains unchanged
     ROM ids W, X, Y and Z for the BBC B+128 are denoted
by the values &IØ, &II, &I2, &I3 respectively
         LSB = least significant byte
         MSB = most significant byte
                       Block save to/from SRAM
    OSWORD 67(&43)
                       (performs *SRLOAD and *SRSAVE)
    Parameter bock
                        bit7 - Ø to save from SRAM
                 XY+Ø
                        bit7 - I to load into SRAM
                        bit6 - Ø for absolute addressing
                        bit6 - Î for pseudo addressing
<LSB of file name address>
                 XY+Î
                        <MSB of file name address>
                 XY+2
                 XY+3
                        <ROM 1d>
                 XY+4 <LSB of start address>
                 XY+5 <MSB of start address>
                 XY+6 <LSB of file length> - save only XY+7 <MSB of file length>
                 XY+8 <LSB of buffer start address>
                 XY+9 <MSB of buffer start address>
                XY+IØ <LSB of buffer length>
                XY+II <MSB of buffer length>
```

On exit, the parameter block remains unaltered unless the buffer addresses cause it to be overwritten during file transfer. The buffer relates to the area of memory used to save file blocks during the transfer to or from the filing system. If the bytes at XY+IØ and XY+II are set to zero then the default buffer is used, using any start address specified in XY+8 and XY+9 - this is the equivalent operation of *SRLOAD or *SRSAVE without specifying a Q parameter, ie a slow transfer is performed. If the value in XY+IØ and XY+II is a value between I and 32768 then the specified number of bytes are used for the buffer starting at the buffer start.

address given in XY+8 and XY+9 If the value in XY+1% and XY+11 is greater than 32768 then a buffer that runs from OSHWM to just below the screen is used for the transfer This is the equivalent of specifying a Q parameter

As with OSWORD 66 ROM ids W, X, Y and Z are represented by &IØ, &II, &I2 and &I3 respectively

OSBYTE Calls

Two OSBYTE calls are implemented for use with SRAM, these are calls 68 and 69

OSBYTE 68(&44) Test RAM presence

This call simply allows you to test if each of the four SRAM banks are present, ie if they can be used SRAM cannot be used if PCB links are altered (Appendix D)

Entry parameters none

Exit parameters the X register returns a value in the least significant four bits to indicate which banks are present If the bit is set the bank is present, if clear it is absent The corresponding bits are

bıt	bank			
Ø	4			
Ī	5			
2	6			
3	7			

OSBYTE 69(&45) Test use of SRAM bank

This call allows use of each of the four SRAM banks, ie if they are being used in pseudo or absolute mode

Entry parameters None

Exit parameters the X register returns a value in the least significant four bits to indicate the operation mode If the bit is set pseudo addressing is being used, if clear, absolute addressing The corresponding bits are

bit	bank
Ø	4
1	5
2	6
3	7

*INSERT and *UNPLUG

To prevent clashes of ROM commands it is possible to 'remove' ROMs under software control - this is done with *UNPLUG The command should be followed by the ROM id, ie *UNPLUG 7 *INSERT will 'plug' the ROM back in -*INSERT 7 A CTRL-BREAK will complete the process

```
absolute workspace
                    132
        134
ACCCON
Access Control Latch
                      134
Acorn Computers 65
ADFS 18,96,119,129,152
Advanced Disc Filing System
                              119
Advanced Network Filing System 39, 119, 152
     111
      39, 119, 152
ANFS
ASCII dump routine
                    154
asterisk
bad command
             84
   error message 83
       17,25,33,49,53,142,143,146,169,178,180
BASIC ROM
          13,18,144
       204
BBC B
BBC B+
       204
BBC B+128
           204
      123
BOOT
booting ROMs 119,229
     229
BRA
BREAK
       27,165
     91,92,145,178,179
BRK flag 179
BRK vector 91,165,167
BRKV 91,165,179,181
     34
bug
change in filing system
character font 53,54,93
```

claim use of the NMIs 92

```
CLI
     84,165
CMOS
   clock 96
   RAM
        105,106,108
command
         13
   action 48
   name 51
   table 50,51
Compact
         x, 111
          38
COMPRESS
CONFIGURE
           105
copyright
           30
copyright offset
                  14, 18
copyright string
                 14, 18
co-processor 96,166
   relocation address
                      14
CRC
     150,151
CTRL-A-BREAK
              119,229
CTRL-BREAK 27,29,96,229
CTRL-C-BREAK 120,229
CTRL-N-BREAK
              120,229
CTRL-R-BREAK 120,229
current language ROM
                      91
current ROM
            25
cyclic redundancy check
                         150,151
DATE
      110
debugging 35,53
   Interpreters
                53
designing ROM images
                      80
DFS 17,91,96,129
disable interrupts
disc filing systems 81,96
DUMPER
       154
dynamic 129
Econet 39
Edit 14,20
Electron 16,17,166,205,229
end-of-ROM marker 151
entry points
             13
EPROM
      147
error message 80,92,180
          91,180,182
   number
   pointer 19
   vector
          164
ERROR1 181,183
ERROR 2
       182,187
Errors
       178
ESCAPE 182
```

```
EXEC files 94
execution address 51
EXPAND
explode 93
   character fonts 128,129
extended help facility 35,229
extended vector
                80,81,83
   entry 80,81
   processing area 81
   space 82,83
extended *HELP
                35,36
extending CONFIGURE 109
extending STATUS 107
extra service parameter 25
filing system
   change
           93
           96,97
   number
   ROM
        80,95
           93
   vectors
format 13
Forth
       14,164
function key definition buffer 128,129
gaining workspace
hangs up 30
hard reset 26,27,96
hash header 151
header 13,19,151
Help Test ROM 35,38
HELPl
       34,41
HELP2
       35,42
HELP3
       43
HELP4
       39,45
                       180
hexadecimal to binary
    16
hidden memory map
   RAM 129,133
   RAM workspace
                  129
I (insert) option
1d 29
ıllegal
         229
                        30
illegal address error
implode 54,93
indicate private workspace
information parameter block 66
interpreter 25,164
interactive help 39
```

```
internal key number 120
 INTERP 52,57
 interrupt polling routine 94
    request 90
IRQ 90,91,180
IRQ1V 180
IRQ2
      91
language 16
   entry point 13,14,16,18,164
language ROM 14, 144, 164,167,181,182
links x,214
mask 111
masking 39,40
MASMON 167
Master 14,17
Megabit ROM 30,182
MODERN 55
monitor
        167
Monitor ROM (BBC Soft) 53
MOS drivers 129
negative flag 51
network 39
Network Filing System 96
   (see ANFS)
networking 92
IMN
   handling 92
   service code 98
   service routine 92
   workspace 97
   NMIs 91,92
non-maskable interrupts 91,92
offset 14
operating system read ROM call (OSRDRM) 43
operating system vectors 81
OR
   111
ORA
     111
OSARGS
       93
OSBYTE calls 144
OSBYTE 15 121
OSBYTE 126
          182
OSBYTE 143 92,134
OSBYTE 170 15
OSBYTE &15
          94
OSBYTE &16 (*FX 22) 94, 144
OSBYTE &17 (*FX 23) 94, 144
```

```
OSBYTE &64
            67
            121
OSBYTE &7A
OSBYTE & 8A
            121
OSBYTE &8D (*FX 141)
                      144,229
OSBYTE &8E 164,168,169
OSBYTE &8E (*FX 142)
OSBYTE &8F (*FX143)
                     144,229
OSBYTE &A8 (*FX 168)
                      145,229
OSBYTE &AA (*FX 170)
                      145
OSBYTE &B3 (*FX 179)
                      145
OSBYTE &BA (*FX 186)
                      145
OSBYTE &BB 169
OSBYTE &BB (*FX 187)
                      145
OSBYTE &FC (*FX 252)
                      145
       97,229
OSFSC
       96,165
OSHWM
       34
OSNEWL
OSRDCH
        182
OSRDRM
        143
       65,66,68,69
OSWORD
OSWORD number
OSWORD &65 68
OSWORD &E
           96
OSWRCH 166
PAGE 129,132
parameter block
                 68
Pascal 14
polled 25
print title string 34
print version string 34
PRIVATE 132,133
private RAM 132,133
   workspace 98 131,132,133,134
protection 30
    bit 150
pull
      56
      56
push
Q (quick) option x,29
RAM bank
          21
redirect a vector 81
relocation address 16
re-location address 166
REPORT 229
```

```
RFS 147
   image 147
   initialisation call 148
   formatted ROM 148
ROM
     13,14
   banks 16
   calls 142
   copyright
              30
   file data 148
   filing system 121,147
   filing system vectors
                          151
   header 13,14
   identity 29
   ımage 14,29,48
   Image Formatter
   polling semaphore 145
   select register 142,143
   title 14,15
   title string 33
   type 16,17,19
   type table 15,33
   types 17
   workspace
             129,131
ROMFS 152
ROMs on disc
             30
SCOMMS
      55
second processor 16,96,166
SEI
    84
selected ROM
             84
service 27
service call
             16,25
     call &22 130
     coding 33
     entry 13,16,17,25
     entry coding 26
     entry point 13,18,25,148,164
     register initialisation 25
        182
     ROM
     type 25,26
     workspace 130
service calls
    1 132,229
     2 229
     3 119
     4 48,96,229
    5
      90
       91
      33,34,35,36,39,229
   10 (&OA) 133
```

```
service calls continued
    11
        92
    12
        92,93,97
    13
        148
    14
        149
        93,229
    15
    16
        93,229
    17
        93
        93
    18
    21
        94
    24
        38,45
    33 (&21)
              129
    34 (&22)
              130,229
    36
        129,229
    37
        95,229
    38
        95,229
    39
        95,96,229
        109
    40
    42 (&2A)
              169,229
   254
        96
   255
        96
sideways format
                  53
sideways RAM utilities
                         28
sideways ROM
              14
sideways writing
simple *HELP
              33
software-generated interrupts
                                 94
soft break 27
SRAM utilities explained
                           28
SRSAVE
        30
stack
       56,165,179,181
stack management
stack pointer
standard header
                  19
                    27
start-up messages
static workspace
                   97,129,130,132,133,134
static type
              129
        105
status
status register
                  179
synchronisation byte
                       150
terminator byte
testing interpreters
                       52
                      143
text pointer vector
title string 19,33,164
       27,31,95
TRACE
          27,28
Trace ROM
Tube 16,19,96,166
Tube relocation address 14,18,19
type byte 15,16
```

```
type number 15
unrecognised command 48
user definable character set 93
USERV
       82,83,84
VDU23 54
vector 85
vector entry 97
version number 14,18,19,34
version string 14,19,34
View 14,17,144
Viewsheet 14,17
workspace 128,129
writing commands
                 54
writing the interpreter 49
zero page
           56
Z80 17
'HELP 39
&C000 130
      93
&D00
&D9F
      229
&E00 132,133
&EF
     66,68
&F0
     66,68,92
&Fl
     66,68
&F2
     36,49,95,107,109,143
&F3
     36,95
&F4
     106,142,148, 180
&F5
     148
     143,148
&F6
&F7
    148
& FC
     179
     92,180,181
&FD
& FE
     92,180
&FE30 134,142
&FF
    182
&FFB9 143
    121,229
*BEEP 13
*CAT
      121,229
*CODE 82
*CONFIGURE
            105,110
*CONFIGURE DATE 106,109
*CONVERT 180,181
```

```
*DISC 97,121,229
*ERRORWISE 182
*FX100 66
*FX142
       165
*FX20 93
*FX20,0 54
*FX22 94,145
*FX23 94,145
*HELP 13,19,28,33,49,229
*HELP COMMANDS 37
*HELP MOS 35
*HELP service routine 34
*ITALICS 49,56
*LINE 82
*MASMON
         167
*MODERN
         49,56
*OFF 84
*ON 84
*PULL 133
*PUSH 133,229
*ROM 122,229
*ROM command 147
*ROM filing system
                    144
       18,20
*ROMS
*SHUT
       95
        55
*SPOOL
         28,29
*SRLOAD
         28,29
*SRREAD
*SRWRITE 21,27,28,29
*STANDARD 49,55,56
*STATUS 105,107,110
```

*STATUS DATE 107

The following books and articles are recommended reading

Title The Advanced Disc User Guide

Author Colin Pharo

Publisher Cambridge Microcomputer Centre

£14 95 Price

Comments Good detailed description of the Acorn DFS Contents apply to 8271 disc controller chip

'Chatting with a chip' by David Atherton Details differences between 8271 and 1770 disc controllers Published in Acorn User July 1986 Pages 143, 144,145 Back issues available from Redwood Publishing, 141-143 Drury Lane, London, WC2B 5TF Describes how the 1770 works and in particular its 8271 emulation

Title Mastering Practical Interpreters and Compilers

Author Bruce Smith Publisher BBC Publications

Price

£14 95 (published April 1987) A book describing the writing of languages and Comments

compilers Practical examples are given throughout and include a graphics language (Grafrite) and a compiler that will compile to

stand-alone machine code

Title BASIC ROM User Guide

Author Mark Plumbley Publisher Adder Publishing

Price £9 95

Comments A good description of how BASIC works

are limited to BASIC 1 and 2, but are applicable to later versions of BASIC though the routine

addresses will have changed

Title Advanced User Guide Authors Bray, Dickens and Holmes

Publisher Cambridge Microcomputer Centre

Price £14 95

Comments Limited to BBC B but still a useful guide

Title Mastering Assembly Language

Author Richard Vialls Publisher BBC Publications

Price £8 95 Addendum 229

Addendum

Chapter 4 All ROMs should respond to the command *HELP and provide full extended help details and lists Chapter 7 Location &D9F is used (page 83) to gain the start address for extended vectors The 'legal' way to do this is to use OSBYTE &A8 However, since Acorn uses &D9F in ROMs I feel it is safe to use the 'illegal' method'

Chapter 9 See note on page 111

Chapter 10 It is not necessary to press the CTRL key when auto-booting ROMs, with a key-BREAK combination Pressing key-BREAK is sufficient Page 121 and 122 *DISC could be selected more elegantly using OSBYTE &8F, Y=&12, X=4 Similarly *CAT via the OSFSC vector with A=5 (page 97) *ROM can be done with OSBYTE &8D

Chapter 11 The use of memory from &100 upwards (ie the error message buffer) to act as a temporary store for the contents of memory &70 to &8F by listing 11 1 has been described as 'untidy', and that it would be better to push the contents onto the top of the stack directly This is not necessarily so - pushing directly onto the stack creates problems in that the command *PUSH could not be used from within a subroutine as the top of stack contents will have changed Error messages when issued by service ROMs will overwrite the pushed data, but as the program will exit this is of no importance Of course the effect of a *PUSH would be to render REPORT usless However, I would remind readers of the philosophy of this book (page 10)

Listing 11 1 uses memory locations &38 and &39 as a vector Tils is fine when BASIC is the main language resident or if you are writing your own language ROM However, it should be avoided in service ROMs. The user locations &70 to &8F inclusive are an alternative. Use of &F2 and &F3 is acceptable or better still the 'official' workspace locations &A8 to &AF

Appendix B The BRA instruction can be replaced with JMP to run on a BBC B or Electron

General

Some confusion has occurred over the clearing of the accumulator after a service call is trapped. In general the accumulator should only be cleared with zero (ie LDA £0) if the service call is not to be passed onto another ROM (ie if a command is identified on service call 4) On the other hand, it should not be cleared on service calls 1,2,9,15,16,34,35,36,37,38,39 and 42

Discs

Long listings mean tired eyes and fingers So avoid the strain and the pain and treat yourself to a copy of the programs listing disc The Master 128 and Compact discs contain several extra listings showing the new OSBYTE and OSWORD calls in action All discs (including the BBC version) include a ROM image combining many of listings into a single ROM image The following versions are available

Master BBC B/B+ Electron	5	25 in 25 in 25 in	DFS DFS DFS	£7 £7 £7	95	(inclusive)
Electron Compact	_	51n 51n	ADFS ADFS	£9 £9	95 95	

For overseas orders, please add £1 to these prices

The 5 251n discs can be loaded on 40 and 80-track drives

Please state which version you require and send your cheque or postal order, payable to Victory Publishing, to Victory Publishing, PO Box 19, London N11 1DS

Note that all mail orders are processed using a database which is kept solely for the use of Victory Publishing If you do not wish to be included in this, please inform us and we will delete your name

Please send me the listing disc for the Advanced Sideways RAM Guide I require the version for

a micro on -in disc in format

I enclose a cheque for £ made payable to Victory Publishing

Name Address SIDEWAYS RAM is a technique central to the philosophy of Acorn's new MASTER series of computers. It allows you to load in software from disc or cassette which is designed to behave as if it were part of the machine, and is always on tap to the user. This book allows you to exploit SIDEWAYS RAM to the full. Written by BRUCE SMITH, the foremost author on this subject, the book is backed up with tried and tested software for you to use straight away or adapt to your needs (and for readers with less nimble fingers it's available on disc).

The secrets of Acorn's ROM Filing System (RFS) are laid open to you and explained in full with numerous examples – there's even a ROM Formatter, developed by the author for use on commercial software, ready for you to type in and use.

The many features of this book include:

- 25 tried and tested programs and routines demonstrating the use of SIDEWAYS RAM.
- Compatibility tables and conversion notes for the BBC and Electron micros.
- Checking routines built into all major programs.
- ROM Formatter to convert BASIC programs on disc to be treated as ROM software.
- Writing languages and interpreters.
- Details of all the SIDEWAYS RAM utilities built into the MASTER.
- Service calls explained and illustrated.
- Routines, programs and text extensively indexed.

BRUCE SMITH is the Technical Editor of the bestselling magazine *Acorn User* and has already written 11 books on the BBC Microcomputer, including *The BBC Micro ROM Book*, and *Mastering Practical Interpreters and Compilers*.

£9.95

ISBN 0948938005

VICTORY

PUBLISHING